ŠKODA

OWNER´S MANUAL



ŠKODA Octavia

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

The description of the vehicle operation, important information about safety, vehicle care, maintenance and self-help, as well as technical vehicle data, are included in this Owner's Manual.

The operation of some functions and vehicle systems is carried out via Infotainment.

Please do not read just this manual, but also the Infotainment Owner's Manual carefully as well. Operation in accordance with the two instruction manuals is a prerequisite for the correct use of the vehicle.

When using the vehicle, the general binding country-specific legal requirements (e.g. transporting children, deactivating the airbag, tyre use, road traffic, etc.) must always be observed.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (hereinafter referred to as ŠKODA or manufacturer)

Table of Contents

On-board literature 4

Notes 5

Structure and more information about the Owner's Manual 6

Abbreviations

Safety

Passive Safety 8
- General information 8
- Correct and safe seated position 8

Seat belts 11
- Using seat belts 11
- Inertia reel and belt pretensioners 13

Airbag system 14
- Description of the airbag system 14
- Airbag overview 15
- Deactivating airbags 19

Transporting children safely 20
- Child seat 20
- Fastening elements 23

Using the system

Cockpit 27
- Overview 26

Instruments and warning lights 28
- Instrument cluster 28
- Warning lights 31

Information system 40
- Driver information system 40
- Driving data (Multifunction display) 41
- MAXI DOT display 44
- Service interval display 49
- SmartGate 50

Unlocking and opening 53
- Unlocking and locking 53
- Anti-theft alarm system 58
- Luggage compartment lid 59
- Electric boot lid 60
- Window operations 61
- Panorama sliding/tilting roof 64

Lights and visibility 67
- Lights 67
- Interior lights 74
- Visibility 76
- Windscreen wipers and washers 77
- Rear mirror 79

Seats and head restraints 81
- Seats and head restraints 81
- Seat features 85

Transporting and practical equipment 89
- Useful equipment 89
- Multimedia holder 99
- Luggage compartment and transport of cargo 100
- Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate) 107
- Net partition 109
- Roof rack 110

Heating and ventilation 112
- Heating, manual air conditioning system, Climatronic 112
- Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) 117

Driving

Starting-off and Driving 120
- Starting and stopping the engine using the key 120
- Starting and stopping the engine at the push of the button 122
- START-STOPsystem 124
- Brakes and parking 126
- Manual shifting of gears and pedals 128
- Automatic gearbox 129
- Running-in and economical driving 132
- Avoiding damage to your vehicle 134

Assist systems 135
- General information 135
- Braking and stabilisation systems 135
- OFF ROAD-mode 138
- Parking aid (ParkPilot) 140
- Rear View Camera 143
- Park Assist 144
- Cruise Control System 148
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 150
- Front Assist 155
- Selection of the driving mode (Driving Mode Selection) 157
- Proactive passenger protection (Crew Protect Assist) 160
- Lane Departure Warning (Lane Assist) 160
- Traffic sign recognition 162
- Fatigue detection 164
- Tyre pressure monitoring 165

Hitch and trailer 167
- Hitch 167
- Trailer 172

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance 178
- Service work, adjustments and technical alterations 178
- Washing vehicle 181
- Cleaning vehicle exterior 182
- Interior care 186

Inspecting and replenishing 189
- Fuel 189
- Engine compartment 194
- Engine oil 197
- Coolant 198
- Brake fluid 200
- Vehicle battery 201

Wheels 205
- Tyres and wheel rims 205
- Winter operation 209

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help 211
- Emergency equipment 211
- Changing a wheel 213
- Puncture repair kit 217
- Jump-starting 219
- Towing the vehicle 220
- Remote control 223
- Emergency unlocking/locking 224
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades 225

Fuses and light bulbs 226
- Fuses 226
- Bulbs 230

Technical data

Technical data 236
- Basic vehicle data 236
- Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type 244

Index

On-board literature

You will always find this **Owner's Manual** and the **Service plan** in the on-board literature for your vehicle.

Depending on the equipment, the on-board literature may also include the **Infotainment Owner's Manual**and in some countries also the brochure **On the road**.

Owner´s Manual
This Owner's Manual applies to all **body variants** of the vehicle and all related **model versions** as well as all **equipment levels**.

This Owner's Manual describes **all possible equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment variants. Consequently, this vehicle **does not contain all of the equipment components** described in this Owner's Manual.

The level of equipment in your vehicle refers to your purchase contract for the vehicle. For questions regarding the scope of equipment, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

The **illustrations** in this Owner's Manual are for illustrative purposes only. The illustrations can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended to provide general information.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. pursues a policy of constant product and model development. Changes to the scope of delivery with regard to design, equipment and technology are therefore possible at any time. The information listed in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

Therefore legal claims cannot be made based on the technical data, illustrations and information contained in this Owner's Manual.

We recommend that **web pages** that are referred to in this Owner's Manual are displayed using the classic view. Not all necessary information may be displayed correctly if the mobile view is chosen.

Service plan
The service plan includes the documentation of the vehicle handover and information relating to the warranty and service events.

Infotainment Owner's Manual
The Infotainment Owner's Manual contains a description of the Infotainment service and possibly also some functions and vehicle systems.

On the move brochure
The On-the-road brochure contains the importer's customer service number and the service number in the individual countries, as well as the emergency numbers.

Online user manuals



Fig. 1

Using this QR code, the web page with a model overview of the ŠKODA brand is opened.

The page can also be accessed by entering the following address in the web browser.

http://www.skoda-auto.com/en/mini-apps/owners-manuals/

- ▸ Select the desired model - a menu for the user manuals is displayed.
- ▸ Select the construction period as well as the language.
- ▸ Select the desired manual - it can be displayed either online or in pdf format.

Notes

Terms used
The on-board literature contains the following terms relating to the service work for your vehicle.

"Specialist" - Workshop - a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist can be a ŠKODA Partner, a ŠKODA Service Partner, or an independent workshop.

"ŠKODA service partner" - a workshop that has been contractually authorized by the manufacturer or its sales partner to perform service tasks on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

"ŠKODA partner" - a company that has been authorized by the manufacturer or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Explanation of symbols
An overview of the symbols used in the Owner's Manual and a brief explanation of their meanings.

- Reference to the introductory module of a chapter with important information and safety warnings
- ▶ Continuation of the module on the next page
- Situations in which the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible
- ® Trademark
- Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display
- Text display in the segment display

WARNING
Texts with this symbol draw attention to threats of a **serious accident, injury or loss of life**.

CAUTION
Texts with this symbol draw attention to the risk of vehicle damage or possible inoperability of some systems.

For the sake of the environment
Texts with this symbol contain information on environmental protection as well as tips for economical operation.

Note
Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Structure and more information about the Owner's Manual

Structure of the manual
The Owner's Manual is hierarchically divided into the following areas.

- **Section** (e.g. Safety) - the title of the Section is always indicated at the lower left-hand side
  - **Main chapter** (e.g. Airbag system) - the title of the main chapter is always indicated at the lower right-hand side
    - **Chapter** (e.g. Airbag overview)
      - 🕮 **Introduction to the topic** – Module Overview within the chapter, introductory information about the chapter content, if necessary, valid for the entire chapter notes
      - **Module** (e.g. Front airbags)

Information search
When searching for information in the Owner's Manual, we recommend using the **Index** at the end of the manual.

Direction indications
All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front" and "rear" relate to the forward direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units of measurement
The volume, weight, speed and length data is given in metric units, unless otherwise indicated.

Display
In this Owner's Manual, the screen on the MAXI DOT display is used as the display illustration, unless specified otherwise.

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
ACC	Adaptive cruise control
AG	Automatic gearbox
AGM	Vehicle battery type
TCS	Traction control
CNG	compressed natural gas
CO_2	Carbon dioxide
COC	Declaration of conformity
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
DSR	Active driver-steering recommendation
EDL	Electronic differential lock
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
RD	Rim depth
EU	European Union
G-TEC	Labelling for natural gas vehicles
GSM	Global System for Mobile communications
HBA	Hydraulic brake assist
HHC	Uphill start assist
KESSY	keyless unlocking, starting and locking
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for output
LED	Lighting element type
MCB	Multi-collision brake
MG	Manual gearbox
MPI	Gasoline engine with a multi-point fuel injection
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbo charging and common-rail injection system
TSA	Trailer stabilisation
TSI	Petrol engine with turbo charging and direct injection
VIN	Vehicle identification number
W	Watt, unit of power
Wi-Fi	Wireless data network
XDS	Functional expansion of the electronic differential lock

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Before setting off 8
Driving safety 8

In this section of the instructions you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety.

We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, safety of children and anything similar.

You will find further information on safety, which concerns you and those travelling with you, in the following chapters of this Owner's Manual.

The complete on-board literature should therefore always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.

Before setting off

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
- Ensure that the function of the wipers and the condition of the wiper blades are free of any defects.
- Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
- Adjust the rear-view mirror so that vision to the rear is guaranteed.
- Ensure that the mirrors are not covered.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure.
- Check the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level.
- Secure all items of luggage.
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle.
- Close all doors as well as the bonnet and boot lid.
- Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
- Protect children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts » page 20, *Transporting children safely*.
- Adopt the correct seated position » page 8, *Correct and safe seated position*. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position.

Driving safety

The **driver** is fully responsible for himself and passengers, especially children. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk.

The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

- Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, (e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls).
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, (e.g. due to medication, alcohol or drugs).
- Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take regular breaks on long journeys (at least every two hours).

The following list contains instructions for the **Passenger** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not lean against the dash panel.
- Do not put your feet on the dash panel.

The following list contains instructions for all **Passengers** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not sit only on the front area of the seat.
- Do not sit facing to the side.
- Do not lean out of the window.
- Do not put your limbs out of the window.
- Do not put your feet on the seat upholstery.

Correct and safe seated position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Correct seat position of the driver 9
Adjusting the steering wheel position 9
Correct seated position for the front passenger 10
Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats 10

WARNING

- The front seats and all head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 20, *Transporting children safely* with a suitable restraint system.
- By sitting incorrectly, the occupant is risking life-threatening injuries.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

Correct seat position of the driver

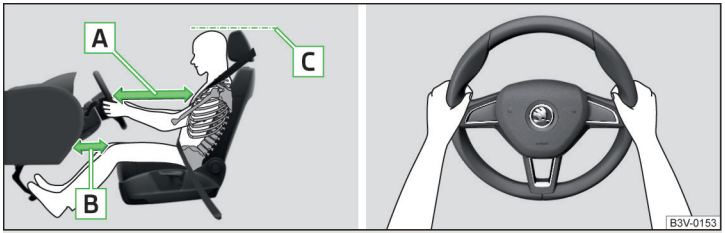


Fig. 2 **Correct seated position for the driver/correct steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.

✓ For vehicles with driver knee air-bag adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel in the vicinity of the knee airbag - B » Fig. 2.

✓ Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.

✓ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm » Fig. 2.

✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head C » Fig. 2 (not for seats with integrated head restraint).

✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 11, *Using seat belts*.

WARNING

- Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position » Fig. 2. Never hold the steering wheel in the "12 o'clock" position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle, inner edge of the steering wheel or similar). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell as they may get caught behind the pedals when driving or applying the braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

Adjusting the steering wheel position



Fig. 3 **Adjusting the steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted. ▸

› Swivel the safety lever under the steering wheel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 3.
› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position. The steering wheel can be adjusted in the direction of arrow 2.
› Pull the safety lever in the direction of arrow 3 to the stop.

WARNING

▪ Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!
▪ The safety lever must be locked so that the steering wheel cannot accidentally change position – risk of accident!

Correct seated position for the front passenger

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

For passenger safety and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of your head C » Fig. 2 *on page 9* (not for seats with integrated head restraint).
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 11.

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated » page 19, *Deactivating airbags*.

WARNING

▪ Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
▪ Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surface of the seats! You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you could suffer fatal injuries by adopting an incorrect seated position!

Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

✓ Adjust the head restraint so that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of the head C » Fig. 2 *on page 9*.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 11, *Using seat belts*.
✓ Use a suitable child restraint system if transporting children in the vehicle » page 20, *Transporting children safely*.

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The physical principle of a head-on collision 12
Correct routing of seat belt 12
Fastening and unfastening seat belts 13

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

Properly fastened seat belts hold occupants to correctly set seats in the right seat position.

Particular safety aspects must be observed when transporting children in the vehicle » page 20.

WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt before each journey – even when driving in town! This also applies to other passengers - there is a danger of injury!
- The maximum protection which seat belts can offer is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 8, *Correct and safe seated position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Information on the correct routing of the belt

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder – on no account across your neck.

WARNING (Continued)

- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, keys, etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

WARNING

Information on dealing with the safety belts

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

WARNING

Information on the proper use of the safety belts

- No two persons (also not children) should ever use a single seat belt together.
- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- Do not use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e.g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 87.

WARNING

Information on the care and maintenance of the safety belts

- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » page 188.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.

WARNING (Continued)

- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the seat belts, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the lock is detected, the relevant seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced – this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

The physical principle of a head-on collision

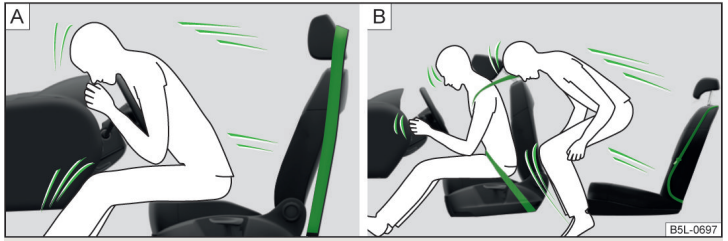


Fig. 4 **Driver without a fastened seat belt/rear seat passenger without a fastened seat belt**

Read and observe ! on page 11 first.

As soon as the vehicle is moving, so-called kinetic energy (the energy of motion) is produced both in terms of the car as well as in terms of the occupants.

The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle including the occupants.

Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

For example, a person's weight of 80 kg "increases" at 50 km/h to 4.8 tons (4800 kg).

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt are thrown forward and strike parts of the interior of the car, such as the steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen in ways which cannot be controlled » Fig. 4 - A. In certain circumstances you could even be thrown out of the vehicle, which could cause life threatening or even fatal injuries.

Rear seat passengers who have not fastened their seat belts are a danger not only to themselves but also to those seated at the front » Fig. 4 – B.

Correct routing of seat belt

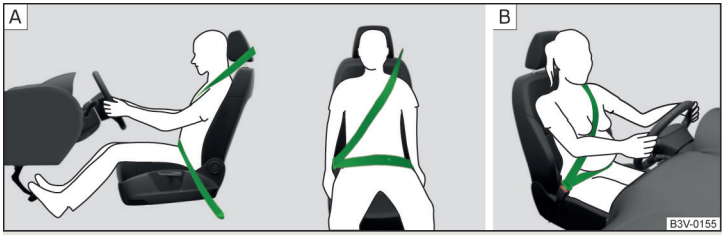


Fig. 5 **Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother**

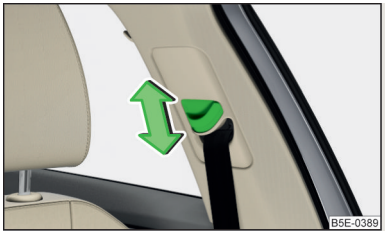


Fig. 6
Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

Read and observe ! on page 11 first.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across the neck but must roughly run over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the pelvis, must not be positioned across the stomach and must always fit snugly » Fig. 5 - A.

Seat belt height adjusters for front seats
The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible to adjust the routing of the front seat belts in the area of the shoulder to the body size.

› Press the height adjuster and move to the desired position » Fig. 6.
› Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Seat belts with pregnant women
Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child.

With pregnant women, the lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 5 - B.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

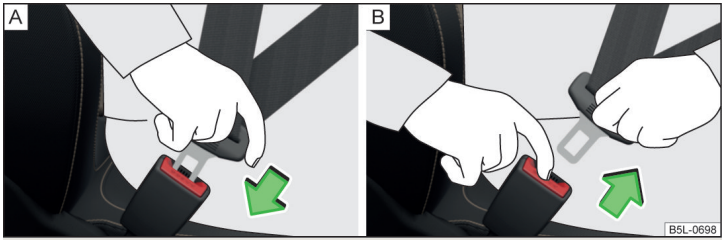


Fig. 7 **Fastening/unfastening the seat belt**

Read and observe ! on page 11 first.

Before using the seat belts the following conditions must be met.

✓ Correctly set head restraint (not for seats with integrated head restraint).
✓ Correctly adjusted seat (applies for the front seats).
✓ Correctly adjusted steering wheel (applies to the Driver's seat).

Fasten
› Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.
› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle for the seat » Fig. 7 - A until it audibly clicks into place.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

Release
Release the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary.

› Press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 7 - B; the lock tongue pops out.
› Manually guide the belt back so that it is easier to fully roll up the webbing, the seat belt does not twist.

! CAUTION
When releasing the seatbelt ensure that the tongue of the lock does not damage the door trim or other parts of the interior.

Inertia reel and belt pretensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Inertia reel 13
Belt tensioners 13

Inertia reel

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel. When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely.

When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel. The belts also block when during full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

! WARNING
If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

If there is a collision the seat belts are tightened by the belt tensioner so that unwanted body motion is prevented.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity.

The front seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a side collision of a certain severity.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of **minor** frontal, side or rear-end collisions, in the case of a roll-over and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced.

WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system, including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.
- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

System description 15
Airbag deployment 15

The airbag system supplements the fastened seat belts and provides additional occupant protection in severe frontal and side collisions.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the indicator light in the instrument cluster » page 35.

WARNING

- **An airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a fastened seat belt.**
- The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but instead forms part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept.
- To ensure passengers are protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match the body size » page 8, *Correct and safe seated position*.
- If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- If there is a fault, have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.
- Do not manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

System description

Read and observe ! on page 14 first.

The inflation of the airbag is carried out in a fraction of a second.

When the airbags are deployed they fill with gas and inflate.

A grey white or red, non-harmful gas is released when the airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following parts.

- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger » page 15.
- Driver's knee airbag » page 17.
- Side airbags » page 17.
- Head airbags » page 18.
- Airbag warning light in the instrument cluster » page 35.
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 19.
- Warning light for the front passenger airbag in the middle of the dash panel » page 19.

Airbag deployment

Read and observe ! on page 14 first.

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

Triggering conditions
It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. An important role is played by factors such as the type of object that the vehicle hits (hard/soft), the impact angle, vehicle speed, etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs. If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.

- Driver's front airbag.
- Front passenger airbag.
- Driver's knee airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.

- Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Rear side airbag on the side of the accident.
- Head airbags on the side of the accident.

When an airbag is deployed, the following occurs.

- The interior light comes on (if the automatic operation of the interior light is switched on - switch).
- The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- All the doors are unlocked.
- The fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.

When there is no air bag deployment?
With **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear collision, overturning of the vehicle or vehicle roll-over there is no airbag deployment.

Airbag overview

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front airbags 15
Driver's knee airbag 17
Side airbags 17
Head airbags 18

Front airbags

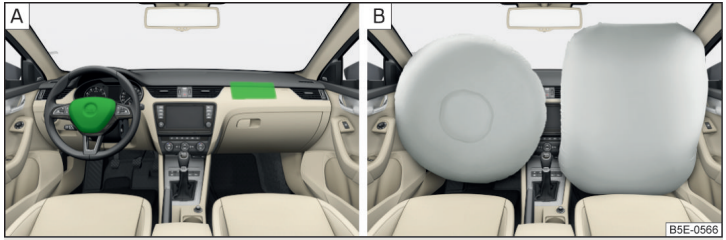


Fig. 8 **Locations of the airbags / gas filled airbags**

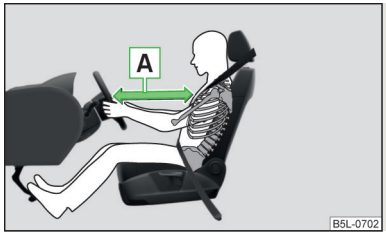


Fig. 9
Safe distance to steering wheel

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the front airbags offer additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger.

The driver's front airbag is located in the steering wheel, the front passenger airbag is located in the instrument panel above the glove compartment » Fig. 8 - A .

The airbags inflate in front of the driver and front passenger when they are deployed » Fig. 8 - B. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

WARNING

Information on correct seated position

- It is important that the driver and front passenger maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel or dashboard A » Fig. 9. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct.
- There must not by any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.

WARNING

Front airbag and transporting children

- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 19, *Deactivating airbags*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed.

WARNING

General information

- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects (such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc.) are to be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within their immediate vicinity.
- Never place objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel.

Note

- In vehicles with a driver's front airbag, the text AIRBAG can be seen on the steering wheel.
- In vehicles with a front passenger airbag, the text AIRBAG can be seen on the dash panel on the passenger side.

Driver's knee airbag

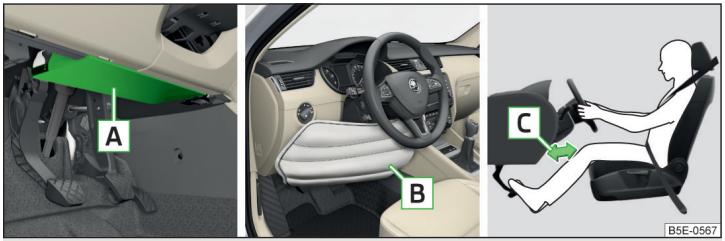


Fig. 10 **Installation of the airbag / Gas-filled Airbag / Safe distance between the legs and the instrument panel**

The driver's knee airbag offers adequate protection for the driver's legs.

The driver's knee airbag A is located in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column » Fig. 10.

The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag B and the risk of injury to the legs of the driver is thus reduced.

! WARNING

- Adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs C and the instrument panel in the vicinity of the knee airbag » Fig. 10. If it is not possible to meet this requirement due to your body size, visit a specialist garage.
- The surface of the airbag module in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. This part should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. Nothing may be attached to the cover of the airbag module or located within the immediate vicinity.
- Do not attach any bulky and heavy objects (bunch of keys etc.) to the ignition key. These can be ejected by the knee airbag when it is deployed and can cause injuries.

i Note

In vehicles with a driver's knee airbag, the text AIRBAG can be seen on the side panel on the driver's side.

Side airbags

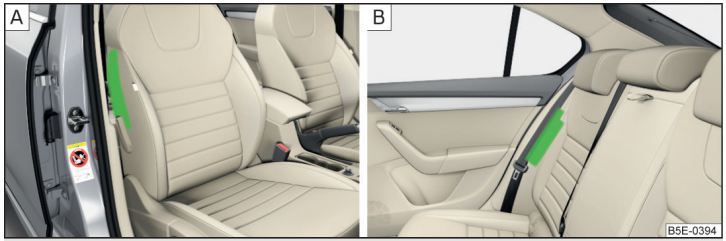


Fig. 11 **Installation locations of airbags: in the front seat/the rear**



Fig. 12 **Inflated airbags**

In the event of severe side collisions, the side airbags provide additional protection for the upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of passengers in the vehicle.

The front side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the seat backrests of the front seats » Fig. 11 - A.

The rear side airbags are located between the entrance area and the seat backrest » Fig. 11- B.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag » Fig. 12 and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

WARNING

Information on correct seated position

- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 22, *Child safety and side airbag*.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as cup holders, should be attached to the doors.
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries » page 20, *Child seat*.

WARNING

- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbags – risk of injury!
- The airbag system operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Further information » page 180, *Airbags*.
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired immediately by a specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

Note

- In vehicles with side front airbags, a label with the text **AIRBAG** is located on the front seat backrests.
- In vehicles with rear side airbags, the text **AIRBAG** can be seen between the entrance area and the rear seat rest.

Head airbags

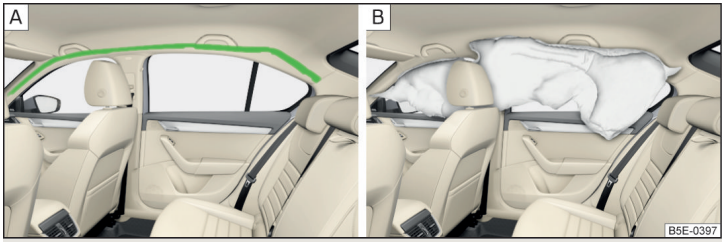


Fig. 13 **Location of the head airbag/gas-filled head airbag**

In the event of a severe side collision, the head airbags offer additional protection for the head and neck area of passengers.

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides of the vehicle interior » Fig. 13 - A.

When deployed, the airbag covers the window area of the front and rear doors, as well as the area of the door pillar » Fig. 13 - B.

Head impact with interior parts is reduced by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area.

WARNING

- There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.
- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. Additionally, clothes hangers must not be used to hang up items of clothing.
- The installation of impermissible accessories in the vicinity of the head airbags can considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the accessories fitted could, conditions permitting, be thrown into the interior of the car and injure the occupants » page 178.

WARNING (Continued)

- When objects are attached to the sun visor, the visor can not be pivoted to the side windows. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.

Note

In vehicles with head airbags, the text **AIRBAG** can be seen on the B column cladding.

Deactivating airbags

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags ____ 19
Deactivating the front passenger airbag ____ 19

Deactivating airbags

If you sell your vehicle, provide the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Please note that the information relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag must be included!

If an airbag in the vehicle is to be turned off, then the buyer is to draw attention to this fact!

Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones outlined below.

- If a child seat must be used on the front passenger seat, where the child is transported facing rearward » page 20, *Transporting children safely*.
- If not being able to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.
- If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
- If other seats have been installed (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » Fig. 14 *on page 19* - A.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags as appropriate.

Deactivation indicator

Display of the airbag deactivation » page 35, *Safety systems*.

Note

A ŠKODA service partner will be able to inform you which, if any, of your vehicle's airbags can or must be deactivated.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

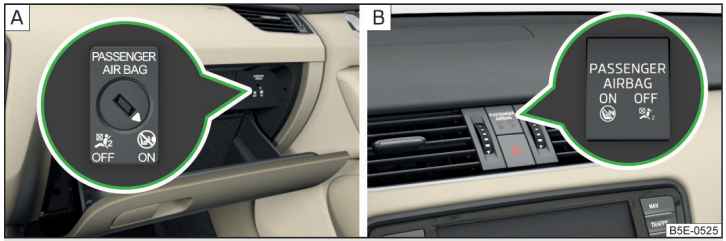


Fig. 14 **Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag/warning light for the front passenger airbag**

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the key switch.

Key switch positions » Fig. 14 - A

OFF Passenger front airbag deactivated

ON Passenger front airbag activated

Switch off

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » !.
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch » Fig. 14 A carefully into the position **OFF**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » !.
› Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.

› Check that the warning light OFF underneath the text PASSENGER AIRBAG » Fig. 14 - B lights up after the ignition is switched on.

Switching on

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key ».
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch » Fig. 14 A carefully into the position ON.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch ».
› Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Check that the warning light ON underneath the text PASSENGER AIRBAG » Fig. 14 - B lights up after the ignition is switched on.

The ON warning light goes out 65 seconds after the key switch status has changed or after the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the warning lights ON OFF flash, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident! Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.
- Do not leave the key inserted in the key-operated switch while driving - vibrations can cause the key to turn in the slot and switch on the airbag! The airbag could be triggered unexpectedly in an accident - it may result in injury or death!

CAUTION

An insufficiently folded out key bit can damage the key switch!

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat 21
Use of the child seat on the front passenger seat 22
Child safety and side airbag 22
Classification of child seats 22
Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt 22

To avoid serious injury or death children are always to be in an appropriate child safety seat with regards to height, weight, and age.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you always transport child seats on the rear seats.

Child seats complying with the ECE-R 44 Economic Commission for Europe standard must be used.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard have a test seal that cannot be removed: a large E within a circle with the test number below.

With child safety seats in groups 2 and 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.

WARNING

- One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire travelling time! Otherwise, in the event of an accident, the child would be thrown through the vehicle and as a result may suffer fatal injuries, and also injure other occupants.

WARNING (Continued)

- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel on the front passenger seat. Further information » page 21, *Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat*.
- When installing the child seat on the back seat, the corresponding front seat must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child being transported in a child seat.

CAUTION

- When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.
- If the head restraints still prevent the child seat from being installed, even in the highest position, you will need to remove them » page 82. After removing the child seat, refit the head restraints.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODAvehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Does not apply to Taiwan



Fig. 15
Sticker on the B column on the front passenger side.



Fig. 16 **Front passenger sun visor / label**

Read and observe and on page 20 first.

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.

The following advice must be heeded when using a child seat in which the child is carried on the front passenger seat.

- It is essential to switch off the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is carried with its back facing the direction of travel ».
- If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.
- If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
- Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.

▸ Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
▸ When using a child seat where there is a height adjuster in the upper area, the height of the passenger seat belt is to be set so that the belt is not "kinked" in the height adjuster. In the event of an accident, there is the risk of injury to the neck of the child carried due to the seat belt!

WARNING

- **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- This fact is also indicated by the label that can be found in one of the following locations.
  - On the B-column on the front passenger side » Fig. 15. The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door.
  - On the front passenger's sun visor. In some countries, the sticker is located on the front seat passenger's sun visor » Fig. 16.
- Once the child seat, in which the child is transported with the back to the direction of travel, is no longer used in the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be switched on again.

Use of the child seat on the front passenger seat

Applies to Taiwan



Fig. 17 **Front passenger sun visor / label**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 20 first.

No babies, infants or children are to be carried on the passenger seat.

A label to this effect can also be found on the passenger's sun visor » Fig. 17.

Child safety and side airbag

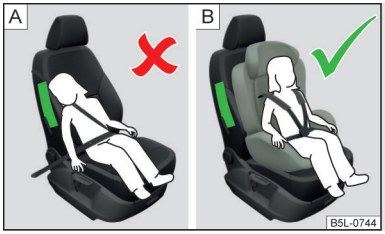


Fig. 18
Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

Read and observe ! and ! on page 20 first.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag » Fig. 18 - A.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag to ensure that the airbag can provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 18 - B.

Classification of child seats

Read and observe ! and ! on page 20 first.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child
0	up to 10 kg
0+	up to 13 kg
1	9-18 kg
2	15-25 kg
3	22-36 kg

Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt

Read and observe ! and ! on page 20 first.

Overview of the usefulness of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats External	Rear seat Centre
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U

U Child seat category "Universal" - a child seat designed for fastening on the seat with the seat belt.

Fastening elements

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Attachment points of the ISOFIX-system 23
Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system 24
Attachment points of the TOP TETHER system 25

Attachment points of the ISOFIX-system



Fig. 19
Labels of the system ISOFIX

ISOFIX is a system for securing child seats quickly and safely.

There are two attachment points between the seat backrest and seat cushion of the outer rear seats and front passenger seat for fixing a child seat with the ISOFIX system» Fig. 19.

First remove the caps to access the locking eyes.

After removing the child seat, replace he caps.

! WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions of the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the attachment points intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX system – risk of death!

i Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with a ISOFIX system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child seats with the ISOFIX system

Overview of the usefulness of child seats with the ISOFIX system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat[b)]	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**
0+ up to 13 kg	E	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**
	D			
	C			
1 9-18 kg	D	**X**	**IL-SU** **IUF**	**X**
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			
2 15-25 kg	-	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**
3 22-36 kg	-	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**

a) The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

b) If the front passenger seat is fitted with ISOFIX system attachment points, it is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval.

IL-SU The seat is suited for installation of a ISOFIX child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval. The "Semi-Universal" category means that the child seat with the ISOFIX system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the information in the list of vehicles which comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the installation of a ISOFIX child seat with "Universal" approval and attachment with the TOP TETHER system belt.

X The seat is not fitted with ISOFIX-system attachment points.

Attachment points of the TOP TETHER system

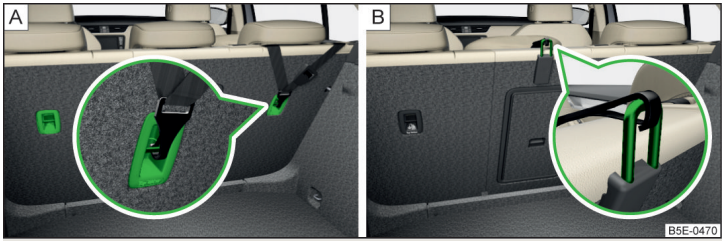


Fig. 20 **Attachment points of the TOP TETHER-system**

TOP TETHER is a fastening system, which restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.

The attachment points for attaching the belt for a child seat with the **TOP TETHER** system are located on the rear side of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 20 - A.

Some country-specific models may also feature an attachment point on the back of the middle rear seat backrest » Fig. 20 - B.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions of the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the **TOP TETHER** system.
- Only use child seats with the **TOP TETHER** system on the seats that have the attachment points.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.

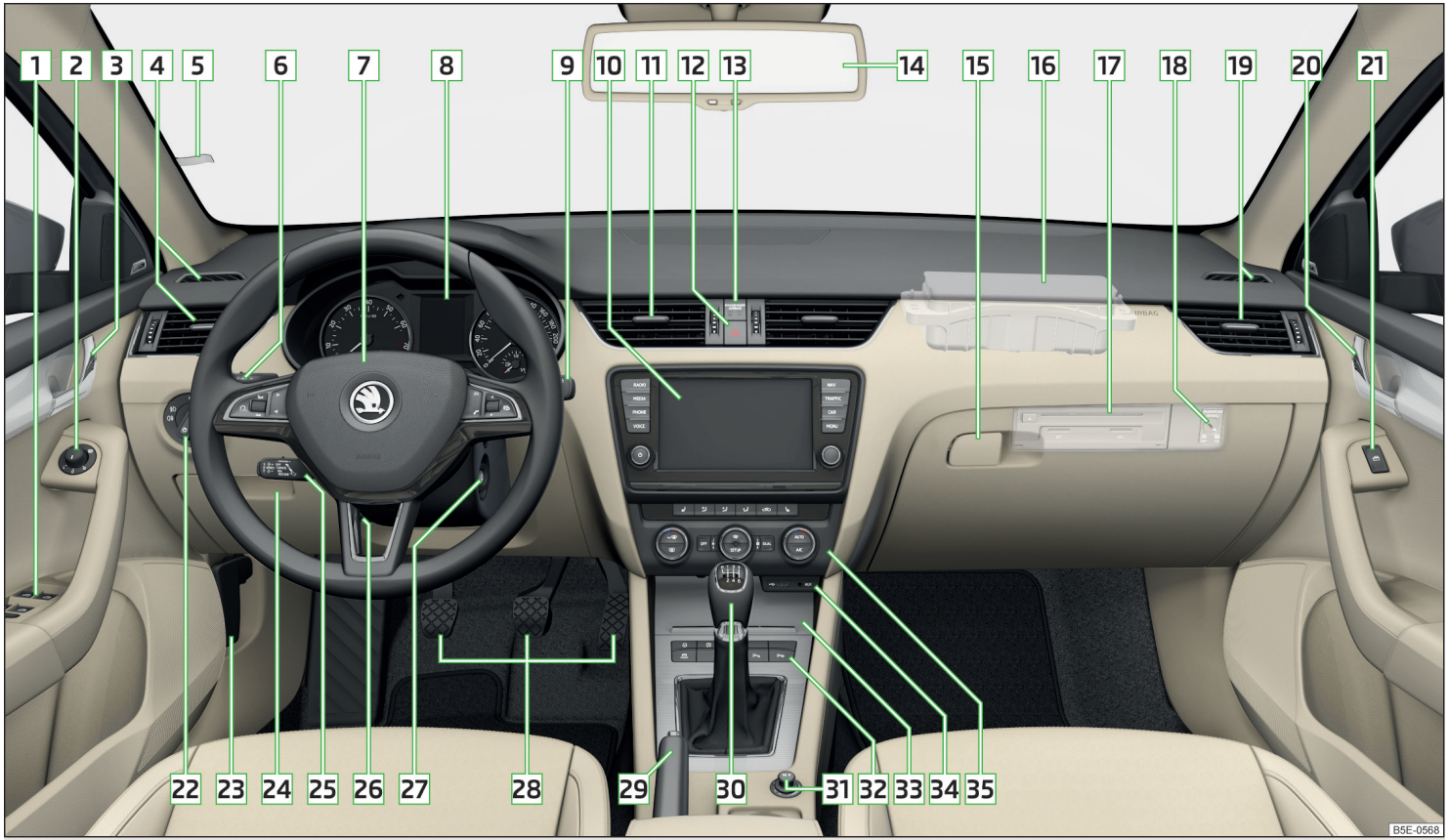


Fig. 21 **Cockpit**

Using the system

Cockpit

Overview

1 Electrical power windows — 62
2 Electric exterior mirror adjustment — 80
3 Door opening lever — 57
4 Air outlet vents — 116
5 Parking ticket holder — 90
6 Operating lever (depending on equipment):
- Turn signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher — 69
- Speed regulating system — 148
- Headlight assist — 71

7 Steering wheel:
- With horn
- With driver's front airbag — 15
- With buttons for operating the information system — 40

8 Instrument cluster — 28
9 Operating lever:
- Windscreen wiper and wash system — 77
- Information system — 45

10 Infotainment » *Owner's Manual for Infotainment*
11 Air outlet vents — 116
12 Button for hazard warning light system — 73
13 Warning light for the front seat passenger airbag — 19
14 Interior rear-view mirror — 79
15 Storage compartment on the front passenger side — 95
16 Front passenger airbag — 15
17 External Infotainment module (in the front passenger storage compartment) » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*
18 Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment) — 19
19 Air outlet vents — 116
20 Door opening lever — 57
21 Power window in the front passenger door — 63
22 Light switch — 68
23 Bonnet release lever — 195
24 Storage compartment on the driver's side — 90
Fuse box (behind the storage compartment on the driver's side) — 227
25 Operating lever for adaptive cruise control — 152
26 Lever for adjusting the steering wheel — 9
27 Depending on equipment fitted:
- Ignition lock — 121
- Starter button — 122

28 Pedals — 128
29 Handbrake lever — 127
30 Depending on equipment fitted:
- Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) — 128
- Selector lever (automatic gearbox) — 129

31 Depending on equipment fitted:
- 12-Volt power socket — 93
- Cigarette lighter — 92

32 Bar with keys depending on the equipment fitted:
- Central locking system — 55
- START STOP — 124
- Traction control TCS — 136
- Electronic Stability Control ESC — 136
- Selection of travel mode — 157
- Park Assist — 144
- Parking aid — 140
- Tyre pressure monitoring system — 165

33 Shelf/phone box — 91
34 USB/AUX input » *Infotainment Owner's Manual*, chapter *USB/AUX Inputs*
35 Depending on equipment fitted:
- Operating controls for the heating — 113
- Operating controls for the air conditioning system — 113
- Operating controls for Climatronic — 114

Note

The layout of the controls on right-hand drive vehicles differs partially from that shown in » Fig. 21. The symbols on the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models.

Instruments and warning lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview 28
Revolutions counter 29
Display 29
Coolant temperature gauge 29
Fuel reserve display - Natural gas 30
Fuel reserve display - Petrol / Diesel 30
Counter for distance driven 30
Setting the clock 31

The instrument cluster gives the driver basic information such as the current speed, engine speed, the state of some vehicle systems and the like.

If there is a fault in the instrument cluster, the following message will appear in the display.

Error: instrument cluster. Workshop!

COMBI-INSTRUM_ WORKSHOP

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety.

Note

- If the message **SAFE CP** appears in the instrument cluster display, the component protection for the instrument cluster is active. Further information » page 180, *Component protection*.
- With the ignition switched on the instruments are also illuminated. The brightness of the instrument illumination is set automatically depending on the ambient lighting throughout.

Overview

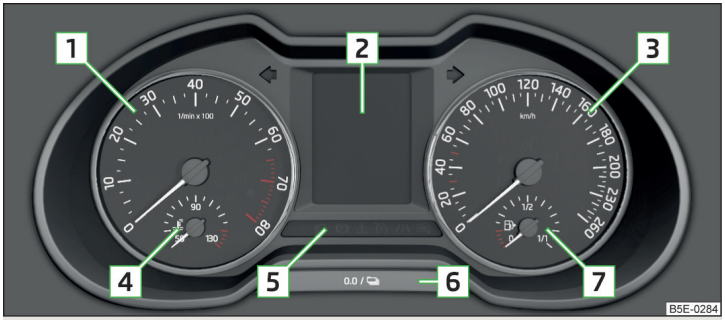


Fig. 22 **Instrument cluster**

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

1. Engine revolutions counter » page 29
   - with warning lights » page 31
2. Display » page 29
3. Speedometer
   - with warning lights » page 31
4. Depending on equipment fitted:
   - Coolant temperature gauge » page 29
   - Gas gauge[1] » page 30
5. Bar with warning lights » page 31
6. Button for:
   - Setting the time » page 31
   - Resetting the counter for distance travelled (trip) » page 30
   - Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval » page 49
7. Gasoline / diesel reserve display » page 30

[1] Applies to G-TEC vehicles

Revolutions counter

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

The tachometer 1 » Fig. 22 *on page 28* shows the actual engine speed per minute.

The beginning of the red scale range of the tachometer indicates the maximum permitted engine speed of a driven-in and operating warm engine.

You should shift into the next highest gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or select mode **D** on the automatic gearbox.

The gear recommendation is important to note in order to maintain the optimum engine speed » page 41.

! CAUTION

The pointer of the tachometer must reach the red area for only a short time - there is a risk of engine damage!

Display

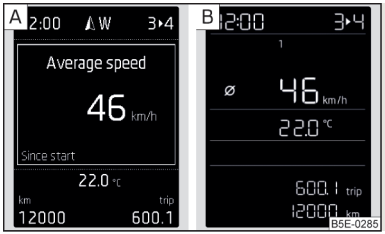


Fig. 23
Display types

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

Display types » Fig. 23

A MAXI DOT display.

B Segment display

The following information will be displayed.

- Exterior temperature information
- Distance travelled » page 30
- Time » page 31
- Warning lights » page 31
- Information system data » page 40

i Note

Depending on vehicle equipment, the MAXI DOT display can be either monochromatic "(black and white)" or colour.

Coolant temperature gauge

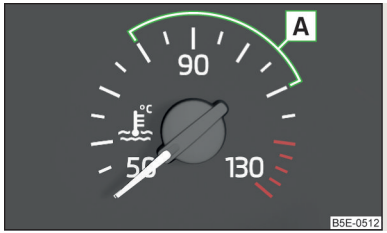


Fig. 24
Coolant temperature gauge

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

The display » Fig. 24 provides information on the engine coolant temperature.

The fuel gauge only works if the ignition is switched on.

Cold range

If the pointer is still in the left area of the scale, this indicates that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads. This prevents possible damage to the engine.

The operating range

The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the middle of the scale A » Fig. 24.

High temperature range

If the pointer reaches the red area of the scale, the coolant temperature is too high.

! CAUTION

- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Fuel reserve display - Natural gas



Fig. 25
Gas gauge

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

The display » Fig. 25 provides information on the natural gas supply in the container.

The fuel gauge only works if the ignition is switched on.

If the natural gas supply in the container reaches the reserve area, the icon appears in the display together with the following message.

Please refuel with CNG. Range: ... km

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

Fuel reserve display - Petrol / Diesel

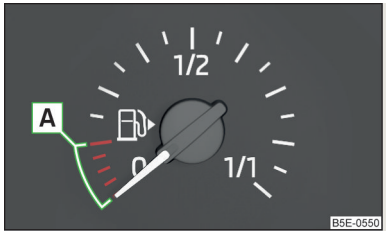


Fig. 26
Gasoline / diesel reserve display

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

The display » Fig. 26 provides information of the petrol / diesel supply in the container.

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

The contents of the fuel tank for petrol / diesel is approximately 50 litres.

When this fuel level reaches the reserve area A » Fig. 26, the warning light » page 36 illuminates.

! WARNING

For the vehicle systems to function correctly, and thus for safe driving, there must be sufficient fuel in the tank. Never drain the fuel tank completely – risk of accident!

! CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

i Note

- After filling up, it can occur that during dynamic driving (e.g. numerous curves, braking, driving downhill and climbing a steep hill) the fuel gauge indicates approx. a fraction less. When stopping or during less dynamic driving, the fuel gauge displays the correct fuel level again. This is not a fault.
- The arrow ▶ next to the icon within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right side of the vehicle.

Counter for distance driven

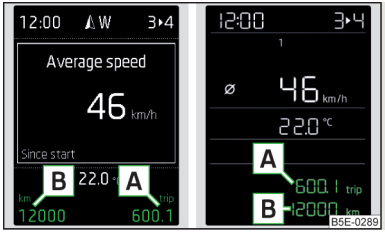


Fig. 27
Display: MAXI DOT display / Segment Display

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

Display » Fig. 27

A Counter for the distance travelled since the last reset (trip)

B Odometer

Reset counter for distance travelled (trip)

› Press button A » Fig. 28 *on page 31*.

Setting the clock

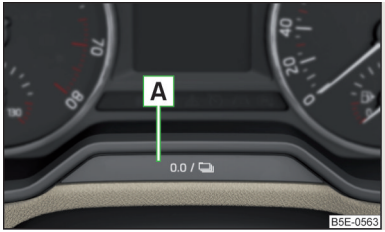


Fig. 28
Button in the instrument cluster

Read and observe ! on page 28 first.

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 28 until the **Time** is shown in the display.
› Release the button A and the system switches to the hour setting function.
› Press the button A again and set the hours.
› Wait around 4 seconds - the system switches to the minutes setting.
› Press the button A again and set the minutes.
› Wait around 4 seconds - the system switches to the initial setting.

The time can also be set in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *Device settings*.

Warning lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Handbrake 32
Brake system 32
Seat belt warning light 32
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 32
Power steering/steering lock (KESSY system) 33
Traction control (TCS) 33
Traction control system (TCS) off 33
Stability Control (ESC) 34
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 34
Rear fog light 34
Exhaust inspection system 34
Glow plug system (diesel engine) 34
EPC Engine performance check (petrol engine) 35
Safety systems 35
Tyre pressure 35
Brake linings 36
Fuel reserve 36
Lane following system (Lane Assist) 36
Turn signal system 36
Trailer turn signal lights 36
Fog lights 36
Cruise control system 36
Brake pedal (automatic transmission) 37
Natural gas operation 37
Main beam 37
Automatic transmission 37
Rear seat belt warning light 37
Generator 37
Coolant 37
Engine oil pressure too low 38
Engine oil level 38
Lamp failure 38
Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine) 38
Windscreen washer fluid level 39
High beam assistant 39
START-STOP system 39
Display of a low temperature 39
Water in the fuel filter (diesel engine) 39
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 40
Distance warning (Front Assist) 40
Advance warning/emergency brake (Front Assist) 40
OFF ROADmode 40
Service 40

The warning lights in the instrument cluster indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights **light up** briefly as a function test.

If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go **out** a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

Warning lights in the display
Depending on the importance the warning light ⚠ (danger) or ⚠ (warning) illuminate along with some of the warning lights in the list with the warning lights.

Depending on vehicle equipment, some warning lights may be displayed in colour on the display. For example, the coolant warning light may be displayed as follows.

▸ - Segment display/monochromatic ("black and white") MAXI DOT display
▸ - Coloured MAXI DOT display

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated warning lights and related messages or instructions in the display of the instrument cluster may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and activate the hazard warning light system » page 73. Place the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 194, *Engine compartment*.

Handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the hand brake is applied.

An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 5 km/h while the handbrake is still on.

Release the handbrake!
RELEASE HANDBRAKE

Brake system

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the brake fluid level in the braking system is too low.

Brake fluid: owner's manual!
BRAKE FLUID PLEASE CHECK

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » page 200.

WARNING

- If warning light illuminates simultaneously with warning light » page 34, *Anti-lock braking system (ABS)*, **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.

At a speed of more than approximately 30 km/h the warning light flashes and an audible warning sounds at a time.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next approx. 2 seconds, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light lights up permanently.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - the ACC delay is not sufficient.

Apply the brake!

› Apply the brake.

For more information about the ACC system » page 150.

Power steering/steering lock (KESSY system)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

Fault in the power steering
illuminates – this indicates a complete failure of the power steering and the steering assist has failed (significantly higher steering forces).

illuminates – this indicates a partial failure of the power steering and the steering forces can be greater.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Steering lock defect (KESSY system)
An audible signal sounds as a warning.

flashes	M	Steering column lock faulty. Stop!
	S	STOP VEHICLE STEERING FAULTY

Park the vehicle, **stop driving**. After switching off the ignition, it is no longer possible to lock the steering, to activate the electrical components (e.g. Infotainment), to switch on the ignition again and to start the engine. Seek help from a specialist garage.

flashes	M	Steering lock: Workshop!
	S	STEERING WORKSHOP

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Steering column lock not unlocked (System KESSY)

flashes	M	Move the steering wheel!
	S	MOVE STEERING WHEEL

▸ Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth, thereby facilitating unlocking the steering lock.

If the steering does also not unlock then, the help of a specialist garage is required.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after the motor is restarted and a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Traction control (TCS)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

If your vehicle is equipped with the ESC system, the TCS is part of the ESC system » page 136.

flashes - the TCS is now being activated.

TCS fault

Illuminates	M	Error: traction control
	S	ASR ERROR

Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the warning light comes on after starting the engine, the TCS may be switched off for technical reasons.
▸ Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light does not illuminates after you switch the engine back on, the TCS is fully functional again.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

For more information about the TCS system » page 136.

Traction control system (TCS) off

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the TCS system is disabled.

M	Traction control (ASR) deactivated.
S	ASR OFF

Note

On vehicles without the ESC system, the warning light **does not illuminate** upon deactivation of the TCS system, but a message is only displayed on the display of the instrument cluster.

Stability Control (ESC)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

flashes - the ESC is now being activated.

ESC fault

Illuminates	**Error: stabilization control (ESC)** **ESC ERROR**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the warning light comes on after starting the engine, the ESC system may be switched off for technical reasons.
▸ Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the indicator light does not illuminate after you switch the engine back on, the ESC is fully functional again.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

For more information about the ESC system » page 136.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – there is an ABS fault.

Error: ABS
ABS ERROR

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- If warning light illuminates simultaneously with warning light » page 32, *Brake system*, **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the rear fog light is switched on.

Exhaust inspection system

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – there is a fault in the emission control system. The system makes possible operation emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Glow plug system (diesel engine)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

flashes – there is a fault in the engine management system. The system makes possible operation emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

There is a fault in the glow plug system if the warning light does not come on or illuminates continuously.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

EPC Engine performance check (petrol engine)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

EPC illuminates – there is a fault in the engine management system. The system makes possible operation emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Safety systems

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

System fault

illuminates - there is a fault in the airbag system.

M **Error: airbag**

S **AIRBAG ERROR**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

The front passenger airbag has been disabled with the key switch

Illuminates for around 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

OFF under the letters **PASSENGER AIR BAG** in the middle of the dash panel illuminates after switching on the ignition » page 19.

One of the airbags or a belt tensioner has been disabled by the diagnostic tool

illuminates for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes for approximately 12 seconds.

M **Airbag/ belt tensioner deactivated.**

S **AIRBAG/ BELT TENSIONER OFF**

ProActive passenger protection

illuminates and the following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Proactive passenger protection not available.**

S **PROACTIVE PASSENGER PROTECT NOT AVAIL**

or

M **Proactive passenger protection: funct. restricted.**

S **LIMITED PROACTIVE PASSENGER PROTECT**

The seat belt for the driver and front passenger needs to be replaced. Seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING

When a fault in the airbag system occurs, there is a risk of the system not being triggered in the event of an accident. Therefore, this must be checked immediately by a specialized garage.

Tyre pressure

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

Change of tyre pressure values

illuminates – there was a pressure change in one of the tyres.

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

› Immediately reduce speed and avoid sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
› Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and check the tyres and their inflation pressure » page 205.
› Correct the tyre pressure if necessary or replace the affected wheel » page 213 or use the repair kit » page 217.
› Store the tyre pressure values in the system » page 165.

System fault

flashes for approximately 1 minute and remains lit – there may be a fault in the tyre pressure monitoring system.

› Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and start the engine again.

If the warning light flashes after starting the engine again, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Other incidents

The illumination of the warning light can have the following reasons.

- The vehicle is loaded on one side. Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
- The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
- Snow chains are mounted.
- A wheel has been changed.

CAUTION

Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light in the instrument cluster can be delayed or does not light up at all.

Brake linings

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - the brake pads are worn.

M **Check brake pad!**

S **BRAKE PADS PLEASE CHECK**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Fuel reserve

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the fuel level in the fuel tank is at the reserve level (approximately 6 litres).

M **Please refuel. Range: ... km**

S **PLEASE REFUEL RANGE ... km**

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

Note

The text in the display goes out after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Lane following system (Lane Assist)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

The warning lights indicates the state of the Lane Assist system.

More information about the Lane Assist System » page 160.

Turn signal system

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

flashes – the left turn signal is turned on.

flashes – the right turn signal is turned on.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light flashes at twice its normal rate. This does not apply when towing a trailer.

Switching off the hazard warning light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

Trailer turn signal lights

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

flashes – the trailer lights are switched on.

If a trailer is hitched and the warning light is not flashing, one of the trailer turn signal lights has failed.

An example message in the display of the instrument cluster

M **Trailer: check left turn signal!**

S **TRAILER TURN SIG_ CHECK LEFT**

Check the trailer bulbs.

Fog lights

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the fog lights are switched on.

Cruise control system

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - the vehicle speed is limited by the speed regulator system and/or the automatic distance control.

Brake pedal (automatic transmission)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – apply the brake.

Natural gas operation

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates - the vehicle is running on natural gas.

Main beam

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the main beam or the headlight flasher is switched on.

Automatic transmission

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

Gearbox overheated
The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

Illuminates	M	**Gearbox overheated. Stop! Log book!**
	S	**STOP VEHICLE GEARBOX OVERHEAT**
Illuminates	M	**Gearbox overheated.**
	S	**GEARBOX OVERHEATED**

▸ **do not continue to drive!** Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.

You can continue your journey as soon as the warning light disappears.

If the warning light does not go out, do not continue driving. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Transmission problem
The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

Illuminates	M	**Gearbox faulty. Workshop!**
	S	**GEARBOX FAULTY WORKSHOP**
Illuminates	M	**Error: gearbox. Reverse gear not available.**
	S	**GEARBOX ERROR REV_ GEAR NOT AVAIL**
Illuminates	M	**Error: gearbox**
	S	**GEARBOX ERROR**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Rear seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – a rear seat belt is not fastened.

illuminates – a rear seat belt is fastened.

When the seat belt is fastened/unfastened, the particular light lights up briefly and indicates the current belt status!

Generator

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the battery is not being charged whilst the engine is running.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

! CAUTION
If in addition to the light the light lights up while driving, **stop driving** - risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Coolant

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

Coolant level too low

Illuminates	M	**Check coolant! Log book!**
	S	**ENGINE COOLANT PLEASE CHECK**

▸ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the coolant level » page 199, *Checking the coolant level*.

If the coolant level is within the specified range and the warning light illuminated again after ignition on, then there may be a malfunction of the cooling fan.

▸ Switch off the ignition.
▸ Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary.

If the coolant level and the fan fuse are OK and the warning light illuminates again after ignition on **do not continue to drive!**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

Illuminates	M	Engine overheat. Stop! Owner's Manual!
	S	ENGINE OVERHEAT STOP

▸ Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.
▸ Continue your journey only after the warning light has disappeared.

Engine oil pressure too low

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

flashes – the engine oil pressure is too low.

M Oil pressure: stop! Owner's Manual!
S STOP VEHICLE OIL PRESSURE

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level.

Even if the oil level is correct, **do not drive any further** if the warning light is flashing. Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

If for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil under the current circumstances, **do not continue driving!** Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine oil level

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

Engine oil level too low

Illuminates	M	Oil level: add oil!
	S	ADD OIL

▸ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level, top up if necessary.

The warning light will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning light will come on again after driving about 100 km.

Engine oil level too high

Illuminates	M	Reduce oil level!
	S	OIL LEVEL TOO HIGH

▸ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level.

In the event of a high oil level, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Fault on the engine oil level sensor

Illuminates	M	Oil sensor: workshop!
	S	OIL SENSOR WORKSHOP

Seek help from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

If for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil under the current circumstances, **do not continue driving!** Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Lamp failure

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – one of the lamps is defective. A message will appear concerning the affected lamp.

An example message in the display of the instrument cluster

M Check right dipped headlight beam!
S DIPPED HEADLIGHT CHECK RIGHT

Diesel particulate filter (diesel engine)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

illuminates – the filter is clogged with soot.

To clean the filter, and where traffic conditions permit » !, drive as follows for at least 15 minutes or until the indicator light goes out.

✓ Gear 4 or gear 5 engaged (automatic gearbox: Position D/S).
✓ Vehicle speed at least 70 km/h.
✓ Engine speed between 1800-2500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning light extinguishes.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning light does not go out and the warning light begins to flash.

M Particulate filter: owner's manual!
S PARTICLE FILTER OWNER MANUAL

Seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING

- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the actual weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions.
- The diesel particulate filter reaches very high temperatures - there is a fire hazard and serious injury could be caused. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like.

! CAUTION

- As long as the warning light illuminates, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with an increased sulphur content can considerably reduce the life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with a high sulphur content.

i Note

We encourage you to avoid constant short journeys. This will improve the combustion process of the soot particles in the diesel particulate filter.

Windscreen washer fluid level

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

⚠ illuminates – the windscreen washer fluid level is too low.

M Add washer fluid!
S WASHER FLUID PLEASE TOP UP

› Fill up the windscreen washer fluid.

High beam assistant

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the high beam assistant is activated » page 71, *High-beam assistant (Light Assist)*.

START-STOP system

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

The warning lights Ⓐ indicates the state of the START STOP system » page 124, *START-STOPsystem*.

Display of a low temperature

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

❄ illuminates – the outside temperature is below +4 °C.

! WARNING

Even at temperatures of around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface! You should therefore not only rely on the outside temperature display for accurate information as to whether there is ice on the road.

Water in the fuel filter (diesel engine)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

The fuel filter with water separator, filters out dirt and water from the fuel.

If too much water is present in the separator, the following information appears on the instrument cluster display.

The warning light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

⚠ Illuminates
M Water in fuel filter. Owner's Manual!
S WATER IN FUEL FILTER

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

Conditions of the ACC system
The warning lights indicate the condition of the ACC system » page 150.

Distance warning (Front Assist)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the safe distance to the vehicle in front is below the minimum.

Information on the Front Assist system» page 155.

Advance warning/emergency brake (Front Assist)

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the system has recognized the risk of a collision or automatically triggered an emergency braking manoeuvre.

Information on the Front Assist system» page 155.

OFF ROADmode

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – the conditions for the engagement of OFF ROADmode are met.

flashes – the hill descent assistant is engaged at the moment.

For more information about OFF ROAD mode » page 138, *OFF ROAD-mode*.

Service

Read and observe ! on page 32 first.

illuminates – note regarding a due service appointment » page 49, *Service interval display*.

Information system

Driver information system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Door, luggage compartment or bonnet warning 40
Auto-check control 40
Overspeed warning at 120 km/h 41
Gear recommendation 41

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the information system vie the display of the instrument cluster provides the following information.

- Driving data (multifunction display) » page 41.
- Data relating to the Maxi DOT display » page 45.
- Service interval display » page 49.
- Selector lever positions for an automatic gearbox » page 129.
- Information and alerts in the Assist systems » page 135.

! WARNING
Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Door, luggage compartment or bonnet warning

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

If at least one door is open, or the boot or bonnet is **open**, the display indicates the relevant open door or boot/bonnet.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is open.

Auto-check control

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on.

As long as the faults are not rectified the messages are always shown. After they are displayed for the first time, the warning lights ⚠ (danger) or ⚠ (warning) continue to be indicated without information for the driver.

Overspeed warning at 120 km/h

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

This function only applies to certain countries.

An audible warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h. The audible warning signal is switched off when the vehicle speed falls below 120 km/h.

Gear recommendation

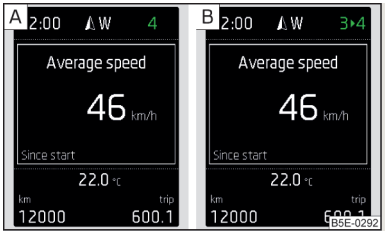


Fig. 29
Information on the selected gear / Gear recommendation

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

A suitable gear is engaged, and if necessary a recommendation to shift to high or lower gear is displayed.

A suitably engaged gear helps to reduce the fuel consumption and assist the service life and reliability of the engine.

Display » Fig. 29

A Optimal gear engaged

B Recommended gear

Recommended gear
Besides showing the engaged gear, the arrow icon ▶ and the recommended gear are displayed.

For instance, if 3 ▶ 4 appears in this display, this means it is recommended that you shift from 3rd into 4th gear.

For vehicles with automatic transmission the recommended gear will be shown provided the mode for manual switching (Tiptronic) is selected.

! WARNING

The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

Driving data (Multifunction display)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 42
Information overview 42
Warning when exceeding the set speed 43
Memory 44

The driving data display is only possible with the ignition switched on.

After the ignition is switched on, the function that was last selected before switching off the ignition is displayed.

For vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, the menu item **Driving data** must be selected and confirmed in the main menu » page 44.

The setting of the units and the switching on / off the display of some information is available possible in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle Settings*.

! WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Operation



Fig. 30 **Buttons/dial: on the control lever/multifunction steering wheel**

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

The selection as well as the settings of the data values can be operated with the buttons on the operating lever as well as on the multi-function steering wheel » Fig. 30.

Description of the operation

Button / dial	Action	Operation
A	Briefly press at the top or bottom	Select data / set data values
B	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification
C	Turn upwards or downwards	Select data / set data values
	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification

Information overview

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

Overview of driving data (depending on the vehicle equipment).

Range
The detail provides information about the distance in km, that can be travelled with the current tank and with the same driving style.

If you drive more efficiently this value can increase.

With G-TEC vehicles, the following details are displayed.
- Total range
- Range with natural gas
- Range with gasoline

Average fuel consumption
The indication is calculated continuously since the last deletion of the memory.

After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 100 m driven.

With G-TEC vehicles, the average consumption of fuel currently being used is displayed.

Current fuel consumption
You can use this information to adapt your driving style to the desired fuel consumption.

When the vehicle is stationary or slowly moving the fuel consumption is displayed in l/h (on models for some countries the following appears --,- km/l). With G-TEC-vehicles running on natural gas fuel consumption is displayed kg/h.

With G-TEC vehicles, the current consumption of fuel currently being used is displayed.

Oil temperature
If the engine oil temperature is in the range 80-110 °C, the engine operating temperature is reached.

If the oil temperature is lower than 80 °C or above 110 °C, avoid high engine revs, full throttle and high engine loads.

If the oil temperature is lower than 50 °C or if a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature is present, **---** are displayed instead of the oil temperature.

Warning against excessive speeds
Set the speed limit, for example, for the maximum permissible speed in town » page 43.

Traffic sign recognition
The following road sign will be displayed.
- Speed limits.
- Overtaking prohibited.

Further information » page 162, *Traffic sign recognition*.

Current driving speed
The display is identical to the display on the speedometer.

Average speed
The indication is calculated continuously since the last deletion of the memory.

After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

Distance travelled
The distance travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

The maximum distance indicated is 9999 km. The indicator is automatically set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Driving time
The time travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

The maximum distance indicated is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The indicator is automatically set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Convenience consumers
There, the total consumption of all consumer comfort in l / h is displayed.

Along with the consumption data, a list of the three consumers with the largest share of fuel consumption (e.g. air conditioning and similar devices) is displayed.

Refuelling amount[1)]
After the consumption of about 10 litres of fuel from the fully refuelled tank, an amount of fuel is displayed in l. This amount can now be **safely** refilled.

Natural gas quality
The details of the quality of natural gas are displayed as a percentage of between 70% to 100%.

The higher the value of natural gas, the lower is the consumption.

Coolant temperature
If the coolant temperature is in the range 80-110 °C, the engine operating temperature is reached.

If the temperature lies below 80 °C or above 110 °C, avoid high engine revs, full throttle and high engine loads.

Warning when exceeding the set speed

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

The system offers the possibility to set a speed limit beyond which an audible alarm will sound and the following warning message appears.

M **Speed ... exceeded.**
S **SPEED TOO HIGH**

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary
› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Set the desired speed limit.
› Confirm the set value, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

The speed limit can be set in 5 km/h intervals.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving
› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Drive at the desired speed.
› Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

The set speed limit can be manually adjusted later if needed.

Deactivate speed limit
› Select the menu item **Warning at** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Confirm the stored value of the speed limits.

The speed limit will be disabled.

The speed limit set mode is stored even after the ignition is switched off and on. After a gap between driving exceeding 2 hours, the pre-set speed limit is deactivated.

[1)] Only valid for some countries.

Memory

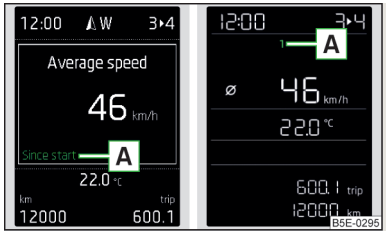


Fig. 31
Memory display: MAXI DOT display (Ⓜ)/segment display (Ⓢ)

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

Following driving data is stored in three locations.

- Average fuel consumption.
- Distance driven.
- Average speed.
- Driving time.

Display of the selected memory in the display at position A » Fig. 31 .

Since start (Ⓜ) Or "1" (Ⓢ)
The memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off.

New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Long-term (Ⓜ) And "2" (Ⓢ)
The memory gathers driving information from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving or 9999 kilometres driven.

The indicator is automatically set back to zero if one of the indicated values is exceeded.

Since refuel (Ⓜ) or "3" (Ⓢ)
The memory gathers driving information since the last refuelling.

The memory is erased automatically the next time you fill up.

Select memory
- Select the driving data information desired.
- Confirm details again to select the desired memory.

Resetting
- Select the driving data information desired.
- Select the desired memory.
- Reset the selected memory with a long acknowledgement (holding pressed).

Note
Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

MAXI DOT display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Main menu 45
Operation using the operating lever 45
Operation using the multifunction steering wheel 46
Menu item **Navigation** 46
Menu item **Audio** 47
Menu item **Telephone** 47
Menu item **Assist systems** 48
Menu item **Lap timer** (Stop watch) 48
Compass point display 49
Eco-tips 49

The MAXI DOT display (hereinafter referred to as display) is a user interface which, depending on the equipment configuration, delivers information about the Infotainment, the multifunction display, the assistance systems, etc.

! WARNING
Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Main menu

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

Call up the main menu

› Press and hold the button A on the operating lever » Fig. 32 *on page 45*.

or

› Press and hold the dial G on the multifunction steering wheel » Fig. 33 *on page 46*.

Main menu items (depending on vehicle equipment)

- **Driving data** » page 41
- **Assist systems** » page 48
- **Navigation** » page 46
- **Audio** » page 47
- **Telephone** » page 47;
- **Vehicle** » page 40, *Auto-check control*
- **Lap timer** » page 48, *Menu item* **Lap timer** *(Stop watch)*

The menus can be opened using the buttons on the control lever » Fig. 32 *on page 45* or on the multi-function steering wheel » Fig. 33 *on page 46*.

Note

- If warning messages are displayed, these messages must first be confirmed to access the main menu.
- For vehicles with Infotainment, the language of the MAXI DOT display can be set in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *Device settings (SETUP key)* .
- For vehicles without infotainment, the language of the MAXI DOT displays can only be adjusted by a specialist garage.

Operation using the operating lever

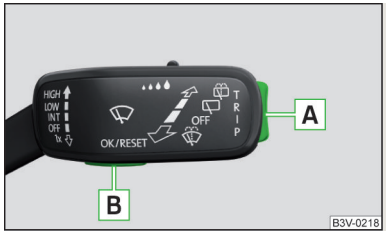


Fig. 32
Buttons: on the operating lever

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

Description of the operation by means of the buttons on the operating lever

Button	Action	Operation
A	Briefly press at the top or bottom	Switch between menu items / menus
	Press top or bottom	Display main menu
B	Press briefly	Confirm menu item / menu

Operation using the multifunction steering wheel

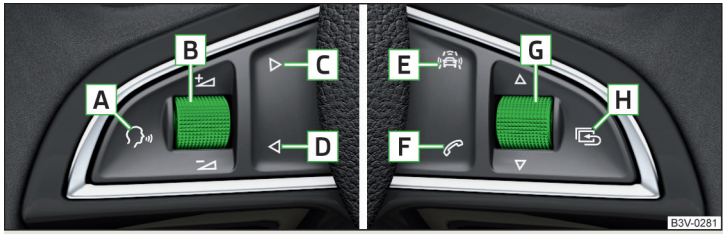


Fig. 33 **Buttons/dials: on the multifunction steering wheel**

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

Description of the operation by means of the buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel

Button / dial	Action	Operation
A	Press briefly	Voice control on/off / Sound off /on (applies to vehicles without voice control)
	Press and hold button	Activate the voice control of theSmartLink[a] function (if supported by the connected device)
B	Press briefly	Switch sound on/off / Switch track playback on/off
	Turn up	Increase volume
	Turn down	Decrease volume
C	Press briefly	To the next radio channel or change to the playback track
	Press and hold button	Fast forward within the track
D	Press briefly	to the previous radio channel or change to the playback track[b]
	Press and hold button	Fast reverse within the track
E	Press briefly	Select menu item **Assist systems** » page 48
F	Press briefly	Take the call / end the call / Menu **Telephone** display / display call list / call the selected contact
	Press and hold button	Reject call / Redial last call
G	Press briefly	Confirm menu item / menu / Repeat the last navigation announcement or clarify / interrupt traffic report
	Turn up	Previous menu item / track[b] / Show available list (e.g. list of available channels, list of the last destinations, call list)
	Turn down	Next menu item / track / View available list (e.g. List of available channels, list the last destinations, call list)
H	Press briefly	Return to a previous level in the menu
	Press and hold button	Display main menu

a) » *Infotainment Owner's Manual*

b) Valid for pressing within about 4 s from the beginning of the given track. Pressing after about 4 seconds from the beginning of the track, starts the playback from the beginning of the track.

Note

Depending on equipment not all functions may be available. The system indicates this through a text message on the display.

Menu itemNavigation

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

Select menu item Navigation

› Select and confirm **Navigation** in the main menu.

Route guidance takes place

Graphical driving recommendations and other route and destination information are displayed after selection.

No route guidance is carried out

A compass/vehicle symbol is shown to display the current vehicle position in relation to the compass after selection.

Then turn dial G » Fig. 33 *on page 46* on the multifunction steering wheel to display the **Last destinations** menu.

The menu shows the **Home address** menu item and a list of recent destinations.

When you select one of the menu items, the destination name and the following items are displayed.

- **OK** - Start navigation
- **Cancel** - Return to the **Navigation** menu – the compass/vehicle symbol will be displayed

If the home address is not defined when the menu item **Home address** is selected, the following message appears: **Please enter the home address on the infotainment system.**

Menu itemAudio

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

Select menu item Audio

› Select and confirm **Audio** in the main menu.

The following information can be displayed in the display.

- **Radio**
  - Currently played station (name/frequency)
  - The selected frequency range (e.g. **FM**) optionally with the number of the station button (e.g. **FM3**), if the station is stored in the memory list
  - List of available station (if more than 5 stations can be received)
  - TP traffic announcements.
- **Media**
  - Name of the track being played, if necessary, further information regarding title (e.g. artist, album name), if this information is stored as a so called ID3 tag on the audio source.

Menu itemTelephone

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

Select menu item Telephone

› Select and confirm **Telephone** in the main menu.

› Turn the dial G » Fig. 33 *on page 46*.

The system displays a call list.

If the call list includes no entries, the following message appears **No entries available.**

The following symbols are displayed next to each entry in the call list.

- Incoming call
- Outgoing call
- Missed call

Outgoing call

- **Cancel** - Ends the call

Incoming call

- **Answer** – Accept incoming call
- **Reject** – Reject incoming call
- **Ignore** - Mute the ringer (this option is only available if there is no other call)

Ongoing conversation or conference call

- **Hang up** - End a call
- **Hold** – Hold a call
- **Continue** – Continue held call
- **Mic. off** – Microphone off
- **Mic. on** – Microphone on
- **Private** – Switch the call to the telephone
- **Hands-free** – Toggles the call to the device

Ongoing and held call

- **Hang up** – End an ongoing call
- **Call wait.** – Switch to a held call
- **Conference** – Make a conference call[1)]
- **Mic. off** – Microphone off
- **Mic. on** – Microphone on
- **Private** – Switch ongoing call to the telephone
- **Hands-free** – Switch ongoing call to the device

Symbols in the display

- Charge status of the telephone battery[1)]
- Signal strength[1)]
- A telephone is connected to the unit

1) This function is only supported by some mobile phones.

Missed calls (if there are several missed calls, the number of calls is shown next to the symbol)

Switch-off microphone

Menu itemAssist systems

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

Select menu item Assist systems

› Select and confirm **Assist systems** in the main menu.

or

› Press the button on the multi-function steering wheel .

In the menu item **Assist systems**, the Front Assist and Lane Departure Warning (Lane Assist) systems can be enabled/disabled.

Menu item Lap timer (Stop watch)

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

Select menu item Lap timer

› Select and confirm **Lap timer** in the main menu.

The Lap timer function offers the possibility of calculating the lap time, for example when driving on a race course. The measured time is shown in the display.

The calculated times are displayed in minutes, seconds and tenths of seconds.

The following functions are available.

- **Start** - start the timing manually or continue the interrupted measurement
- **Since start** - Start the timer automatically upon start-up
- **Statistics** - Evaluate and reset the measured times

Time measurement

Manually start the measurement

▸ Select the menu item **Lap timer** - **Start**.

Start the measurement automatically

▸ Select the menu item **Lap timer** - **Since start**. Timing will begin automatically when starting up.

Start timing of next round

▸ Select the menu item **New lap** during timing.

During timing, information about the fastest and the last lap time are also shown in the display.

Measure split time

▸ During the timing, select the menu item **Split time**. The split time data is displayed for about 5 seconds in the display.

The split time can be measured repeatedly during a round.

Stop measurement

▸ During the timing, press the menu item **Stop**.

The time measurement is stopped, the following functions are now available.

- **Continue** - Continue measurement of the current lap time
- **New lap** - Start measurement of the next lap time.
- **Abort lap** - Cancel the timer (the aborted lap time is not stored)
- **Hang up** - End timing (the aborted lap time is stored)

Evaluate recorded times

▸ Select the menu item **Lap timer** - **Statistics**.

The following information is displayed.

- **Fastest:** - The fastest lap
- **Slowest:** - The slowest lap
- **Average:** - The average lap time
- **Overall time:** - The total of all the lap times

Reset measured times

▸ Select the menu item **Lap timer** - **Statistics** - **Reset**.

! WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Only use the **Lap timer** when you are in any traffic situation where you have full control over the vehicle.

i Note

- The system allows the measurement of up to 11 lap times.
- Individual lap times are no longer measured after 99 hours, 59 minutes and 59 seconds. After this time has been reached, a new lap time is automatically measured.
- The measured times cannot be reset individually.
- If the measured times are not reset, then these are stored even after turning off the ignition.

Compass point display



Fig. 34
Compass display

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

Applies to vehicles with factory-installed navigation system.

In the display when the ignition is on, an arrow symbol as well as an abbreviation for the corresponding direction (in relation to the current direction of travel) are displayed » Fig. 34.

Note

The direction indicator can be displayed at the top or bottom of the screen displayed in response to further information.

Eco-tips

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

To minimise fuel consumption, fuel economy tips can appear in the display.

Eco tips are indicated next to the letters **ECO-TIP**.

For instance, if the air-conditioning is on and a window is open, the following message appears **ECO TIP Air conditioning switched on: close windows.**

Enable/disable » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Service interval display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval ____ 49
Service messages ____ 50
Resetting the service interval display ____ 50

The service interval display shows the time and mileage to the next service event.

The information regarding the service intervals can be found in the service schedule.

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval

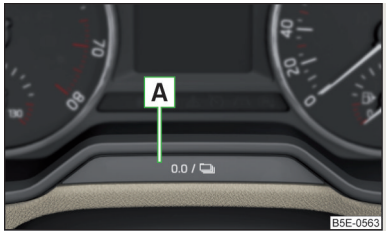


Fig. 35
Button in the instrument cluster

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 35 until the **Service** is shown in the display.
› Release the button A.

In the display the symbol appears for 4 seconds and the following message for the kilometre or days to the next service appointment.

M **Oil service ... / ... Inspection ... / ...**
S **OIL SERV_ IN ... OR ... INSPECT_ IN ... OR ...**

The details regarding the remaining kilometres and days to wait until the next scheduled service can also be displayed in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Service messages

Messages before reaching the scheduled service date
Before the next service date has been reached, after switching on the ignition, the symbol as well as a message about the mileage or days until the next service event appears in the display.

Messages upon reaching scheduled service date
Once the service interval is reached, the icon appears in the display after the ignition is switched on, as well as the following message, for example.

M **Oil service now!**
S **OIL SERVICE NOW**

or

M **Inspection now!**
S **INSPECTION NOW**

or

M **Oil service and inspection now!**
S **OIL SERVICE + INSP_ NOW**

Resetting the service interval display

We recommend that the display reset is completed by a specialist garage.

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display could cause problems to the vehicle.

Variable service interval
For vehicles with variable service intervals, after resetting the oil change service display in a specialist garage, the values of the new service interval are displayed, which are based on the previous operating conditions of the vehicle.

These values are then continuously matched according to the actual operating conditions of the vehicle.

SmartGate

Introduction



Fig. 36
ŠKODA websites

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Connection to SmartGate using Wi-Fi 51
Connection to SmartGate using Wi-Fi Direct 51
SmartGate web interface 52
Password/PIN code change 52

SmartGate is a system that transmits certain driving data (such as fuel consumption, speed or similar) via Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct.

The ŠKODA compatible communications device (e.g. phone, tablet, notebook) offer the possibility to further transmit the received data.

More information on available applications, a list of compatible communication devices and on SmartGate can be found on the ŠKODA website » Fig. 36.

http://www.skoda-auto.com

WARNING
- The general binding country-specific regulations for operating communication devices in the vehicle must be observed.
- Never leave a communication device in the deployment area of an airbag, on a seat, on the dash panel or any another area, from which it can be thrown during a sudden braking manoeuvre, an accident or a collision - risk of injury!
- Never connect or disconnect a communication device while driving - risk of accident!

CAUTION

- To increase the access security to the transmitted vehicle data, once the ŠKODA application has been started, you are requested to change the password/PIN code if the default password/PIN code has not yet been changed » page 52, *Password/PIN code change*. It is not possible to start the ŠKODA application without changing it.
- ŠKODA accepts no responsibility for any problems caused by incompatibility or improper functioning of the communication devices.

Note

The ŠKODA applications, support communications devices with the Android operating system version 4.x.x and later and iOS 7.x.x and higher.

Connection to SmartGate using Wi-Fi

Read and observe and on page 50 first.

Connecting to an Android communication device

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on the Wi-Fi on the communication device to be connected.
› Start the SmartGate application using the communication device to be connected.
› Then follow the instructions in the manual, which are included in the SmartGate application.

With SmartGate, a maximum of four communication devices can be connected simultaneously using Wi-Fi, with as many launched ŠKODA applications as required.

Connecting to an iOS communication device

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on the Wi-Fi on the communication device to be connected.
› Allow the communication device to be connected to search for available Wi-Fi networks (see the Owner's Manual for the communication device to be connected).
› In the menu of the detected networks select "SmartGate_..."[1] or "DIRECT SmartGate_..."[1].
› Enter the password » page 52.

With SmartGate, a maximum of four communication devices can be connected simultaneously using Wi-Fi. In these communication devices, up to four ŠKODA applications can be started simultaneously.

Disconnection

The connection can be switched off in one of the following ways.

› Switch off the ignition for longer than 5 seconds (for vehicles with a starter button, switch off the engine and open the driver's door).
› End the connection in the SmartGate application.
› Switch off the Wi-Fi on the connected communication device.

Automatic connection

If the communication device once had a connection with SmartGate, then the connection is automatically restored under the following conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The Wi-Fi on the communication device to be connected is switched on.
✓ The communication device to be connected stores the password required for the connection check.

Connection to SmartGate using Wi-Fi Direct

Read and observe and on page 50 first.

This type of connection is intended for communication devices running the Android operating system.

Connection set-up

› Switch on the ignition.
› Start the SmartGate application using the communication device to be connected.
› Then follow the instructions in the manual, which are included in the SmartGate application.

With SmartGate, a maximum of two communication devices can be connected simultaneously using Wi-Fi Direct, with as many launched ŠKODA applications as required.

If you want to connect to SmartGate in another vehicle, you must first end the existing connection to the SmartGate application and then re-establish the connection.

[1] The last 6 characters of the VIN vehicle identification number of your vehicle are displayed at position ....

Disconnection
The connection can be switched off in one of the following ways.

› Switch off the ignition for longer than 5 seconds (for vehicles with a starter button, switch off the engine and open the driver's door).
› End the connection in the SmartGate application.
› Switch off the Wi-Fi on the connected communication device.

Automatic connection
If the communication device once had a connection with SmartGate, then the connection is automatically restored after the ignition is started.

SmartGate web interface

Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.

SmartGate parameters can be set in the SmartGate web interface.

The following address must be entered via Wi-Fi in the web browser of the connected communication device.

HTTP://192.168.123.1

The setting changes are only effective after pressing the "Save" button and then the "Reboot" button.

Password/PIN code change

Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.

The password for the Wi-Fi connection preset by the factory is the complete vehicle identification number (upper case); the PIN code for the Wi-Fi Direct connection preset by the factory is the last 6 digits of the vehicle identification number.

After changing the password/PIN, the connection to SmartGate must be re-established on the communication device to be connected using the new password or new PIN code.

If the password/PIN code is still set to the preset factory password/PIN code, you are requested to change the password/PIN code after starting the ŠKODA application. Without changing the password/PIN code, you are unable to use the application.

Changing the password for the Wi-Fi connection
› Open the SmartGate web interface.
› In the "WPA / WPA2 key:" menu item, enter the new password (8 to 63 alphanumeric characters and special characters, small and capital letters).
› Confirm the password change by tapping on the "Save" interface.
› Restart SmartGate by tapping on the "Reboot"[1] interface.

Changing the PIN code for the Wi-Fi Direct connection
› Open the SmartGate web interface.
› In the "WiFi Direct PIN:" menu item, enter the new PIN code (6 digits).
› Confirm the PIN code change by tapping on the "Save" interface.
› Restart SmartGate by tapping on the "Reboot"[1] interface.

Note
If you have forgotten your password for the connection to SmartGate, SmartGate must be reset to factory settings in a specialised workshop.

[1] If the "Reboot" interface is not displayed, you must manually restore the web browser display.

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Locking/unlocking using the key via the lock cylinder 54
Unlocking/locking with the remote control key 54
Unlocking / locking - KESSY 55
Locking and unlocking the vehicle with the central locking button 55
Safe securing system 56
Individual settings 56
Opening/closing a door 57
Child safety lock 57
Malfunctions 57

Your car is equipped with a central locking system.

The central locking system allows you to lock and unlock **all** doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid at the same time. The functions of the central locking system can be individually adjusted » page 56.

After unlocking, depending on vehicle equipment and setting the following is valid for the central locking.

- The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked.
- An double audible signal sounds additionally on vehicles which are fitted with the anti-theft alarm system.
- The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.
- The interior lamp illuminates.
- The SafeLock system is switched off.
- The indicator light in the driver door stops flashing.
- The exterior mirrors are set into the driving position.
- The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated.

After locking, depending on vehicle equipment and setting the following is valid for the central locking.

- The turn signal lights flash once as confirmation that the vehicle has been locked.
- An audible signal sounds additionally on vehicles which are fitted with the anti-theft alarm system.
- The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are locked.
- The interior lamp goes out.
- The SafeLock system is switched on.
- The warning light in the driver door begins flashing.
- The exterior mirrors are folded back into the park position.
- The anti-theft alarm system is activated.

If the doors or the luggage compartment lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

Protection against unwanted vehicle unlocking

If the vehicle is unlocked and a door or the boot lid not opened within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safe securing system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched back on.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. These individuals might not be able to leave the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!

CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.
- If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Locking/unlocking using the key via the lock cylinder

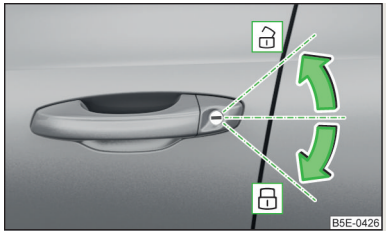


Fig. 37
Left side of the vehicle: Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

Read and observe ! and ! on page 53 first.

The key allows you to unlock or lock the vehicle via the lock cylinder in the driver's door » !.

Unlocking/locking the vehicle with the key » Fig. 37

Unlocking the vehicle

Locking the vehicle

! CAUTION

To unlock or lock the vehicle with the remote control key via the lock cylinder, first remove the cap of the lock cylinder » page 224.

Unlocking/locking with the remote control key

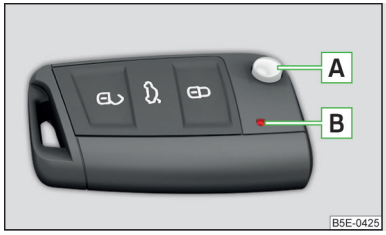


Fig. 38
Remote control key

Read and observe ! and ! on page 53 first.

Function and description of the key » Fig. 38

Unlocking the vehicle

Locking the vehicle

Depending on equipment fitted:
- Boot lid unlock/unlatch (vehicles fitted with manual operation)
- Luggage compartment door open/close/movement of the luggage compartment door stop (vehicles with electric operation)

A Button for folding the key in/out

B Warning light for the battery condition

If the red warning light does not flash when you press a button on the key, the battery is discharged.

Boot lid unlock/unlatch for vehicles fitted with manual operation
By **pressing briefly** symbol key the boot lid unlocks.

Press and hold the symbol key to release the lid (partially opened).

If the lid is unlocked or released with the key symbol on the key, then the lid is automatically locked after closing. You can set a lock delay » page 59.

! CAUTION

- The operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by signal interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range.
- The operating range of the remote control key is approx. 30 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking does react to the remote control at less than around 3 metres away » page 223.

i Note

The remote control will operate only when visual contact with the vehicle.

Unlocking / locking - KESSY

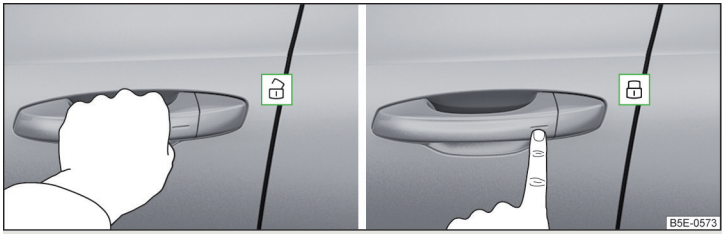


Fig. 39 **The front door handle**

Read and observe and on page 53 first.

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key » Fig. 39.

The sensors for unlocking or locking are located in the handle of the front door.

Unlocking
Locking

When unlocking or locking the vehicle, the key must be at a maximum distance of approximately 1.5 m from the front door handle.

Locking
On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside if the ignition has not been turned off.

After locking the car, it is not possible to unlock within the next 2 seconds by touching the door handle. This can be used to check whether the vehicle is locked.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle
If one of the doors is closed after locking the vehicle and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the passenger compartment, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. After unlocking the vehicle again, the turn-signal lights flash four times. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again.

If the boot lid is closed after locking the vehicle and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the luggage compartment, the lid is unlocked (partially opened). The turn-signal lights flash four times as an indication that the boot lid has been unlocked again. The boot lid **remains released**(partially opened).

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Key in vehicle.**
S **KEY IN VEHICLE**

CAUTION

- Some types of gloves can affect the unlocking or locking device in the door handle.
- There is no automatic locking after leaving the car.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle with the central locking button



Fig. 40
Central locking button

Read and observe and on page 53 first.

When the vehicle has not been locked from outside and no door is open, the button » Fig. 40 can be used to unlock or lock the vehicle.

Locking is shown by the illuminated symbol.

The central locking system also operates if the ignition is switched off.

The following applies after locking.
- Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.
- The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.

WARNING

Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – danger to life!

Safe securing system

Read and observe and on page 53 first.

As soon as the vehicle is locked from the outside, the safe lock prevents opening the doors from the inside.

This function is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after switching out the ignition.

M **Check SAFELOCK! Owner's Manual!**

S **CHECK SAFELOCK**

After locking the vehicle, the warning light in the driver's door flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals.

Switching off

The safe lock can be switched off in one of the following ways.

- By locking twice within 2 seconds.
- By disabling the button for interior monitoring and anti-towing » page 58.

The indicator light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on opening lever.

The SafeLock switches on the next time the vehicle is locked.

WARNING

If the car is locked and the safe securing system activated, no people must remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Individual settings

Read and observe and on page 53 first.

The following functions of the central locking system can be set individually in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Car settings*.

Opening a single door

The function allows you to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control. KESSY makes possible the release of individual doors as well as the fuel filler flap, depending on the area in which the key is located. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked when the unlocking is repeated.

Unlocking a vehicle side door

This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control unit. KESSY makes possible the release of both doors on one side as well as the fuel filler flap, depending on the area in which the key is located. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked when the unlocking is repeated.

Unlock all doors

This function allows you to unlock all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

Automatic locking/unlocking

The function allows you to lock all doors and the boot lid from a speed of about 15 km/h. The button in the boot lid handle is deactivated.

Renewed automatic unlocking of all doors as well as the luggage compartment door when removing the ignition key or by opening any of the doors. In vehicles with the system KESSY this is when any door is opened.

The vehicle can also be unlocked by pressing the Central Locking Button in the centre console » page 55.

Acoustic signals when locking / unlocking

For vehicles with an anti-theft alarm system, the acoustic signals can be enabled / disabled in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle Settings*.

Opening/closing a door

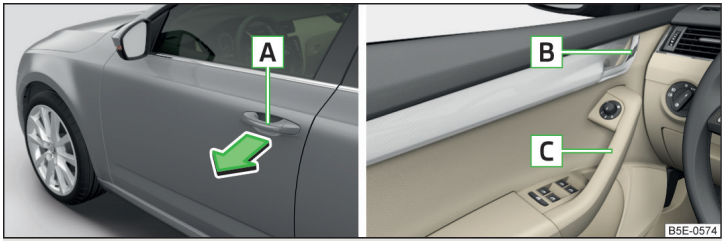


Fig. 41 **Door handle/door opening lever**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 53 first.

Opening from the outside
› Unlock the vehicle.
› Pull on the door handle A in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 41.

Opening from the inside
› Pull on door opening lever B of the door and push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside
› Grasp pull handle C and close the door.

! WARNING
- Make sure that the door has closed correctly as it can open suddenly while driving – risk of death!
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- An opened door can close automatically if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on an incline – risk of injury!
- Never drive with the doors open - there is a risk of death!

Child safety lock

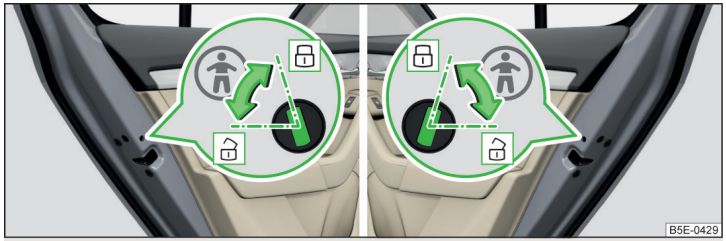


Fig. 42 **Rear door: Child safety system switch on / off**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 53 first.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

Switching the child safety system on/off » Fig. 42
Switching on
Switching off

You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 53 first.

Fault with the central locking
If the warning light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then lights up for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

If the central locking system has failed, only the driver's door can be locked/unlocked using the key. The other doors and the boot lid can be manually locked or unlocked.
▸ Locking/unlocking the driver's door » page 224.
▸ Locking door » page 224.
▸ Unlocking the boot lid » page 224.

Failure of the system KESSY
If the following message is displayed in the display of the instrument cluster, then help is required from a specialist company.

M **Keyless access system faulty.**

S **KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM FAULTY**

Key battery discharged
If the voltage of the key battery is too low, the following message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

M **Change the key battery!**

S **KEY BATTERY PLEASE CHANGE**

Replace the battery » page 223.

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior monitor and towing protection 58

The anti-theft alarm system (hereinafter referred to as alarm system) increases protection against theft and break-in attempts into the vehicle.

The anti-theft alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked. This is automatically disabled after release.

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to as alarm).

Triggering the alarm
The alarm is triggered when the following unauthorized actions are carried out on the locked vehicle.
- Opening the bonnet.
- Opening the boot lid.
- Opening the doors.
- Manipulation of the ignition lock.
- Towing the vehicle.
- Movement in the vehicle.
- Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system.
- Uncoupling the trailer.

If the driver's door of a vehicle is unlocked and opened by the lock cylinder, then the alarm is triggered.

Switching off the alarm
The alarm is turned off by pressing the button on the key or switching on the ignition.

CAUTION
Before leaving the vehicle, it must be checked that all of the windows, doors and the sliding/tilting roof are locked in order to ensure the full functionality of the anti-theft alarm system.

Note
The alarm system has its own power source. The working life of the power supply source is 5 years.

Interior monitor and towing protection



Fig. 43
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

Read and observe ! on page 58 first.

The **interior monitor** detects movements inside the locked vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

The **anti-towing** detects tilts in the locked vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

Deactivate the interior monitor and the towing protection if there is a possibility of the alarm being triggered by movements (e.g. by children or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

Deactivating
› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the driver door.
› Press the symbol key on the B column of the driver's side » Fig. 43.

The illumination of the symbol in the button changes from red to orange.

› Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

By disabling the interior monitoring and the anti-towing the safe lock is switched off.

CAUTION

The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.

Luggage compartment lid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Boot lid opening/closing ____ 59
Delayed locking of the boot lid ____ 59

When closing the boot lid does do not press on the rear window.

Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the luggage compartment lid.

The function of the button in the grip above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or at a speed of 5 km/hour or more for vehicles with central locking. The function is restored after the vehicle stops and the door is opened.

WARNING

- Never drive with the luggage compartment lid fully opened or slightly ajar otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

Boot lid opening/closing

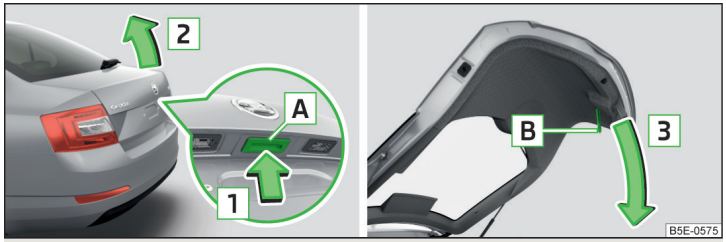


Fig. 44 **Opening / closing tailgate**

Read and observe ! on page 59 first.

For vehicles without the KESSY after unlocking the vehicle, the boot lid can be opened with the button in the handle above the number plate.

Opening

› Press the button A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 44.
› Raise the lid in the direction of the arrow 2.

Closing

› Grasp the mount B and lift in the direction of arrow 3.

Delayed locking of the boot lid

Read and observe ! on page 59 first.

If the boot lid is unlocked with the symbol key on the key, then the door is automatically locked after closing.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

CAUTION

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically. We therefore recommend locking the vehicle with the symbol key on the key.

Electric boot lid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating description 60
Set the top position of the lid 61
Malfunctions 61

The boot lid (hereinafter referred to as lid) can be operated electrically and manually in the event of an emergency » page 61.

If the lid hits an obstacle when opening or closing, it stops and an audible signal sounds. When closing the flap is lifted additionally.

WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the lid open or unlatched, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Only open and close the lid when there is no one in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- Make sure that when closing the lid, no body parts are crushed – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Do not attempt to close the lid manually during an electrical closing process - there is a risk of damaging the electric lid operation system.

CAUTION

- Before opening or closing the lid, check if there are any objects in the opening or closing range which could obstruct the movement (e.g. a load on the roof rack or on the trailer, etc.) – risk of causing damage to the lid!
- In certain circumstances, if the lid is loaded (e.g by a thick layer of snow), the opening process of the lid can be interrupted. Remove the snow from the lid to re-enable the electrical operation.
- If the lid closes automatically (e.g. under load of snow), you will hear an intermittent beep.
- Always close the flap before disconnecting the battery.

Operating description

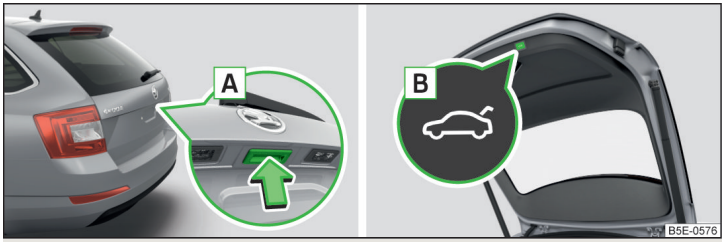


Fig. 45 **Lid operation**



Fig. 46 **Button for the lid operation / button on the key**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 60 first.

Open flap

The lid can be opened by pressing one of the following elements.

- Handle A » Fig. 45.
- Button C » Fig. 46.
- Symbol button on the remote control key (for about 1 s).

Close the flap

The lid can be closed by pressing one of the following elements.

- Button B » Fig. 45.
- Handle A » Fig. 45.

Stop lid movement
The lid movement can be stopped by pressing one of the following operating elements.
- Button B » Fig. 45.
- Button C » Fig. 46.
- Symbol button on the remote control key (for about 1 s).
- Handle A » Fig. 45.

When opening the lid using the symbol key on the key or the button C » Fig. 46 an acoustic signal sounds.

Note
If you rapidly enter the vehicle during the opening or closing process of the boot lid, the whole vehicle may jerk and as a result the movement of the lid can be interrupted.

Set the top position of the lid

Read and observe ! and ! on page 60 first.

If the space for opening the lid is restricted (e.g. height of garage) or for more convenient operation (e.g. according to a person's height), it is possible to adjust the top position of the boot lid.

Adjusting
› Stop the lid in the desired position (electrically or manually).
› Press and hold the button B » Fig. 45 *on page 60* for longer than 3 seconds.

The setting of the lid top position is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Delete
› Carefully raise the flap manually to the limit.
› Press and hold the button B » Fig. 45 *on page 60* for longer than 3 seconds.

An audible signal is emitted. The original position is deleted and the top lid position is set.

Note
The top position which is reached when the lid opens automatically, is always lower than the maximum top position which can be reached when the lid is opened manually.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 60 first.

Examples of operational malfunctions

Description of the malfunction	Possible solutions
The lid cannot be opened	Unlocking the lid » page 224
The lid does not react to an opening signal	Removing a possible obstacle (e.g. snow), re-opening the lid » page 60 Press handle A » Fig. 45 *on page 60* and pull the lid upwards
The lid remains in the top position	Manual closing of the lid
The lid is open and the battery was disconnected	

Close manually
Close the door slowly and completely. It must be ensured that when pressing the lid into the lock, pressure is applied to the centre edge of the lid above the ŠKODA logo.

Window operations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Mechanical window lefter 62
Electric window lifters 62
Opening/closing the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors 63
Force limit 63
Window convenience operation 64
Malfunctions 64

The windows can be operated mechanically by means of the handle attached to the respective door panel.

The windows can be operated electrically from the following locations; all windows from the driver's seat and also via the buttons for the windows in the passenger door or the rear doors.

WARNING

The windows should be closed carefully – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- In the event that the windows are frozen, first of all remove the ice » page 184, *Windows and external mirrors* and only then operate the window lift. Otherwise, the window sealing and the window lift mechanism could be damaged.
- Make sure that the windows are closed whenever you leave the locked vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

At high speeds, you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

Note

When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

Mechanical window lefter

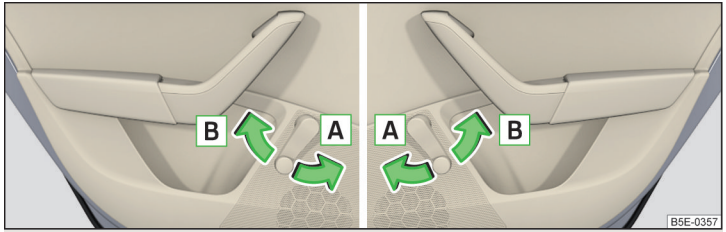


Fig. 47 **Window operation: left/right**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 62 first.

Using the respective window crank only one window can be operated mechanically.

Opening

› Lift the crank in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 47.

Closing

› Turn the crank in the direction of the arrow B » Fig. 47.

Electric window lifters

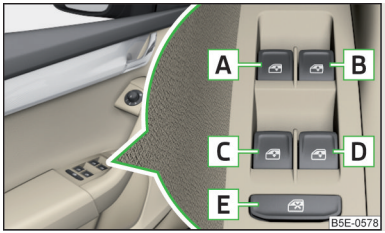


Fig. 48
Buttons for window levers

Read and observe ! and ! on page 62 first.

All windows can be operated from the driver's seat.

Power window buttons » Fig. 48

A Left front door
B Right front door
C Left rear door
D Right rear door:
E Disable/enable the buttons in the rear doors

Opening

› Lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

The window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop.

Closing

› Pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

The window can also be fully closed automatically by pulling the button up to the stop. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Disable/enable the buttons in the rear doors

› Press button E » Fig. 48.

When the buttons in the rear doors are disabled, the warning light in button E illuminates.

After switching the ignition off, it is still possible to open or close the windows for approx. 10 minutes.

After the driver's or passenger's door is opened the operation of the window is only possible with the button A » Fig. 48, in which case they have to be pressed or pulled for approx. 2 seconds.

The window lift mechanism is equipped with protection against overheating. Repeated opening and closing of the window can cause this mechanism to overheat. If this happens, it will not be possible to operate the window for a short time. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the overheating protection has cooled down.

WARNING

- The system is fitted with a force limiter » page 63. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. The windows should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury!
- If the rear seats are accommodating people who are not completely independent, e.g. children, it is recommended that the buttons in the rear doors be disabled with button E for safety reasons.

CAUTION

- In the winter, ice accumulating on the surface of the window may cause there to be more resistance when closing the window. The window will stop and move back several centimetres.
- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- Always close the windows before disconnecting the battery.

Opening/closing the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors



Fig. 49
Power window button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 62 first.

There is a button in the front passenger door and in the rear doors for that window.

Opening

› Lightly press the button **downwards** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

The window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the **down** button as far as the stop. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop.

Closing

› Lightly press the button **upwards** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

The window can be completely closed automatically by briefly pressing the **up** button as far as the stop. Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

Force limit

Read and observe ! and ! on page 62 first.

The electrical power window system is fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds - **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Window convenience operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 62 first.

The convenience operation of the windows offers the possibility of opening or closing all the windows at once.

Settings the window convenience operation » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Convenience operation can take place in one of the following ways.

Opening

› Press and hold the symbol button on the key.
› Keep the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the unlock position until all electrically operated windows are open.
› Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the key A until it stops in the open position » Fig. 48 *on page 62*.

Closing

› Press and hold the symbol button on the key.
› Keep the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the lock position until all the electrically operated windows are closed.
› Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the key A until it stops in the closed position » Fig. 48 *on page 62*.
› In the KESSY system, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the door handle of the front door » Fig. 39 *on page 55*.

The prerequisite for ensuring that the convenience operating feature correctly is the automatic opening/closing of all windows is operational.

Convenience opening or closing the window using the key in the driver's door locking cylinder is only possible within 45 seconds of locking the vehicle.

The movement of the window is stopped immediately when the respective button is released.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 62 first.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the automatic window lifter will not operate. The system must be activated.

Activation sequence

› Switch on the ignition.
› Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
› Release the button.
› Pull the relevant button upwards again for approx. 1 second, and keep it pressed down.

Panorama sliding/tilting roof

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 65
Power limit 65
Convenience operation of sliding / tilting roof 65
Sliding / tilting roof malfunction 66
Manual operation of sunblind 66
Electrical operation of the sunblind 66
Malfunction of the sun blind 66

The panorama sliding/tilting roof (hereinafter referred to as sliding/tilting roof) can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is no lower than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. However, as soon as the driver or front passenger's door is opened it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

! CAUTION

Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

Operation

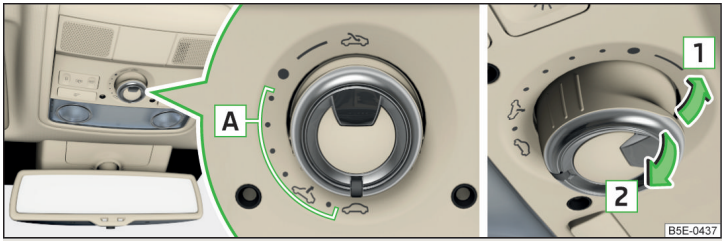


Fig. 50 **Operation of the sliding/tilting roof - Version 1**

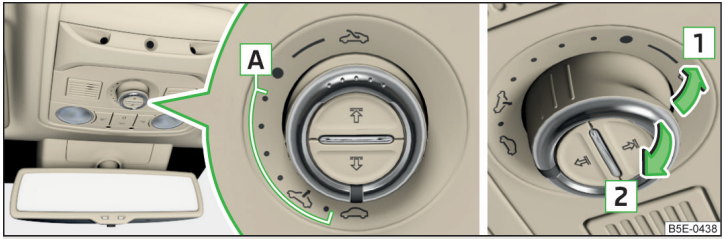


Fig. 51 **Operation of the sliding/tilting roof - Version 2**

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The sun roof can be operated with the rotary switch.

Operation of the sliding/tilting roof

- Open fully
- A Open partially
- ● Comfort position
- 1 Opening (switch in position)
- 2 Closing (switch in position)

! WARNING

When operating the sliding/tilting roof, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.

Power limit

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

The closing of the sliding/tilting roof without power limitation is only with the third attempt at closing. The time interval between the individual closing attempts should not exceed 5 s - **the sliding/tilting roof closes with full force!**

Convenience operation of sliding / tilting roof

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The convenience operation makes it possible to open or close the sliding/tilting roof using the key or the KESSY system above the sensor in the door handle of the front door.

Tilting roof

The sliding/tilting roof can be opened as follows.

› Press and hold the symbol button on the key.
› Hold the key in the unlock position in the driver's door lock.

Closing

The sliding/tilting roof can be closed as follows.

› Press and hold the symbol button on the key.
› Hold the key in the lock position in the driver's door lock.
› In the KESSY system, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the door handle of the front door » Fig. 39 *on page 55*.

By interrupting the locking process, the closing operation is interrupted.

! WARNING

Close the sliding/tilting roof carefully – risk of injury!

Sliding / tilting roof malfunction

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sliding/tilting roof will not operate. The sun roof must be activated.

Activation sequence
› Switch on the ignition.
› Set the switch to the position » Fig. 50 *on page 65* or » Fig. 51 *on page 65*.
› Press the switch on the recess E down and pull forwards.

The sliding/tilting roof opens and closes again after around 10 seconds.

› Release the lever.

Manual operation of sunblind

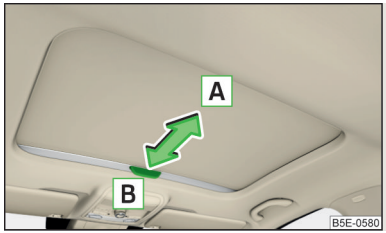


Fig. 52
Operation of the sun blind

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The Sun blind of the sliding/tilting roof is opened manually by pulling up on the handle in the direction of the arrow A and closed in the direction of the arrow B » Fig. 52.

! WARNING
When operating the sunshade, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

Electrical operation of the sunblind

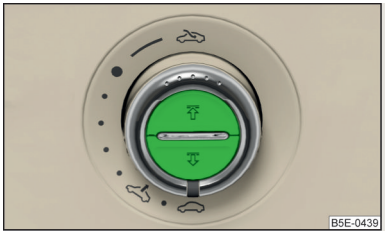


Fig. 53
Operation of the sun blind

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The sliding sun blind (hereinafter referred to as sun blind) can be opened or closed using the buttons.

Operation of the sun blind » Fig. 53
Opening
Closing

By briefly pressing the button, the sun blind is fully opened or closed. The movement of the sun blind can be stopped by briefly pressing any key.

By pressing and holding the key, the sunblind is opened or closed in the desired position. By releasing the key, the opening or closing process is stopped.

! WARNING
When operating the sunshade, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

Malfunction of the sun blind

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, it is possible that the sun blind will not operate correctly. The sun blind must be activated.

Activation sequence
› Switch on the ignition.
› Set the switch to the position » Fig. 53 *on page 66* .
› Press the button and hold down.

The sun screen opens and closes again after around 10 seconds.

› Release the button.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating the lights 68
Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT) 68
Turn signal and main beam 69
Automatic driving lamp control 70
Xenon headlight 70
High-beam assistant (Light Assist) 71
Front and rear fog light 72
Fog lights with the CORNER function 73
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME 73
Hazard warning light system 73
Parking lights 74
Driving abroad 74

The lights work only with the ignition on, unless otherwise stated.

The layout of the controls on right-hand drive vehicles differs partially from that shown in » Fig. 54 *on page 68*. The symbols that mark the individual positions of the controls are identical.

Keep the headlights lenses clean » page 185, *Headlight glasses*.

WARNING

The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the light and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the light conditions.

Note

▪ The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet surfaces are free from mist after a short period, although the headlight lenses may still be misted up in the peripheral areas. This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system.
▪ If the visibility is poor and the lights are not on (except daytime running light) the brightness of the instrument lighting reduces to alert the driver to switch on the lights in due time.
▪ The brightness of the instrument lighting with the lights on (except daytime running lights) can be set in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle Settings*.

Operating the lights

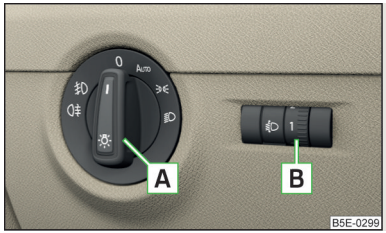


Fig. 54
Light switch and control dial for the headlight beam range regulation

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

Switching lights on and off

Depending on the equipment configuration, the light switch A » Fig. 54 can be turned to one of the following positions.

0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)
AUTO Switching lights on/off automatically » page 70
Switching on the side light or parking light » page 74
Switching on the low beam

Headlight range control

Turning the dial B » Fig. 54 from the position **–** to **3** to gradually adjust the headlight range control and shorten the light cone.

The positions of the width of illumination correspond approximately to the following car load.

– Front seats occupied, boot empty
1 All seats occupied, boot empty
2 All seats occupied, boot loaded
3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

Xenon headlight

The Xenon bulbs adapt automatically to the load and driving state of the vehicle when the ignition is switched on and when driving. Vehicles that are equipped with Xenon headlights do not have a manual headlight range adjustment control.

! WARNING

Always adjust the headlight beam to meet the following conditions.
▪ The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
▪ The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

Note

▪ The light switch is in position or **AUTO** and the ignition is turned off, the low beam is switched off automatically [1] and the status light is lit. The side light is switched off when the ignition key is removed, for vehicles with the KESSY system after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door.
▪ If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.

Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

The daytime running light (hereinafter referred to as "function") lights the front and rear vehicle area (only valid for some countries).

The lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The light switch is in the position **0** or **AUTO**.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The function is activated.

[1] Does not apply to the position **AUTO**, as long as the conditions are met for the COMING HOME function » page 73.

Activating/deactivating function on vehicles with Infotainment
The function can be disabled/enabled in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Deactivating on vehicles without Infotainment
› Switch off the ignition.
› Pull the indicator / main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push down and hold in this position.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Hold the lever in this position for min. 3 seconds after switching on the ignition.

The deactivation of the function is confirmed by an audible signal.

Activating on vehicles without Infotainment
› Switch off the ignition.
› Pull the indicator / main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push up and hold in this position.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Hold the lever in this position for min. 3 seconds after switching on the ignition.

The activation of the function is confirmed by an audible signal.

WARNING
Always switch on the low beam when visibility is poor.

Turn signal and main beam

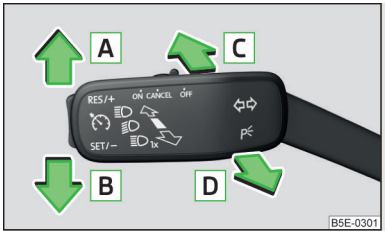


Fig. 55
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

Lever positions » Fig. 55

A When the right turn signal light is switched on, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster ➡

B When the left turn signal light is switched on, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster ⬅

C Depending on equipment (spring-tensioned position):
- Switch on main beam – the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster
- Switch on main beam assistant » page 71

D Depending on equipment (spring-tensioned position):
- Switch on main beam or headlight flasher (spring-loaded position)
- Switch off main beam assistant/switch on headlight flasher (spring-tensioned position)

The **main beam** can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

The **headlight flasher** can be operated even if the ignition is switched off.

The **turn signal light** switches itself off automatically when driving around a curve or after making a turn.

"Convenience turn signal"
When the control lever is lightly pressed to the pressure point A or B then the respective turn-signal lamp flashes three times.

If during the "comfort flashing" the operating lever in the opposite side is pressed, then the blinking stops.

The "Lane change flash" can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

WARNING
Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

Automatic driving lamp control

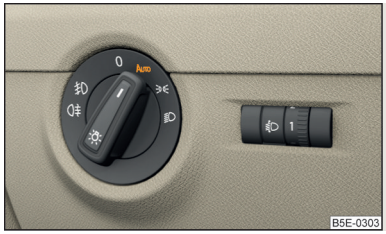


Fig. 56
Light switch: AUTO position

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

The light switch is in position **AUTO**» Fig. 56 then depending on the equipment the automatic switch on / off the lights corresponding to the light or weather conditions (rain) takes place.

The sensitivity of the sensor for the determination of the ambient light can be adjusted in the infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the lettering **AUTO** illuminates next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol next to the light switch also lights up.

Automatic driving light control during rain
The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The function is activated.
- ✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.
- ✓ The windscreen wipers are on for more than 30 s.

The light turns off about 4 minutes after turning off the wipers.

Automatic headlight control in rain can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

! CAUTION

Poorer visibility is evaluated by a motor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the interior mirror sensor. Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen in order to avoid impairing the function or its reliability.

Xenon headlight

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

The Xenon headlight (hereinafter referred to as system) ensures that the roads are illuminated independent of the traffic and weather conditions.

The system automatically adjusts the cone of light in front of the vehicle based on the driving information (such as vehicle speed and loading situation, use of the windscreen wipers, selected driving profile, vehicle position according to the data from Infotainment navigation).

The system works as long as the light switch is in position **AUTO**.

The system operates automatically in the following modes.

Out of town mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is similar to the low beam.

City mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that it illuminates the adjacent pavement, crossings, etc. The mode is active at speeds of 15-50 km/h.

Motorway mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can respond in time to an obstruction or other hazard in time. The mode is active at speeds above 110 km/h.

Rain mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver can reduce the glare from oncoming vehicles in rain.

The mode is active at speeds of 50 – 90 km/h and if the windscreen wipers continuously operate for a period of time longer than about 2 minutes. The deactivation of the mode is carried out a few minutes after switching off the wiper.

Fog mode
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted so that the driver is not dazzled by the reflection of the cone of light by fog in front of the vehicle.

The mode is active at speeds of 15 – 70 km/h and if the rear fog light is switched on for a period of time longer than about 10 seconds. The deactivation of the mode is carried out a few minutes after switching off the rear fog lights.

Dynamic cornering lights
The cone of light in front of the vehicle is adjusted to the steering angle so that the road in the curve is illuminated. This function is active at speeds greater than 10 km/h and in all system modes.

travel mode
If the travel mode is activated, there is no automatic cone of light adaptation in front of the vehicle.

The travel mode can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Economy mode
When the Eco driving mode » page 157 is activated the system is in Economy mode and there is no direction dependent light cone adaptation in front of the vehicle.

! WARNING
If there is a system malfunction the headlights are automatically lowered to the emergency position, which prevents a possible dazzling of oncoming traffic. This reduces the cone of light in front of the vehicle. Drive carefully and visit a specialist garage as soon as possible.

High-beam assistant (Light Assist)

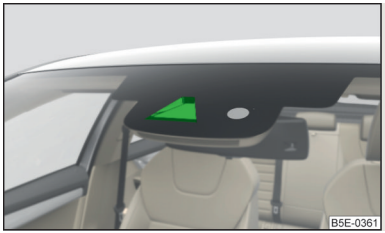


Fig. 57
Camera view window for the main beam assistant

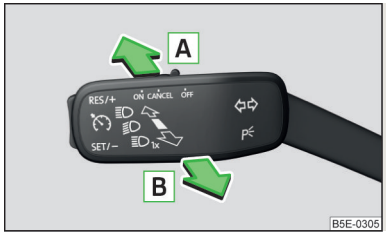


Fig. 58
Operating lever: High beam assistant activation/deactivation

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

The main beam assistant (hereinafter referred to as system) can prevent other road users from being dazzled.

The system automatically switches the high beam on/off in accordance with the existing traffic (other vehicles) and environmental conditions (e.g. driving through a lighted village).

The high beam on/off is controlled by a sensor or a camera » Fig. 57.

The system works under the following conditions.
- ✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.
- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The system is switched on.
- ✓ The vehicle speed is above 60 km/h or above 40 km/h[1)].

The headlight switches off automatically when the speed falls below 30 km/h.

Activation/deactivation
The activation/deactivation can also be displayed in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Switching on
› Place the lever in position A (spring-tensioned position) » Fig. 58.

The instrument cluster illuminates the warning light of the systems switched on.

Switching off
› If the headlight **is** switched on automatically, move the lever into position B (spring-tensioned position) » Fig. 58.

[1)] Only valid for some countries.

The warning light goes out. The high beam turns off.

› If the headlight **is not** currently switched on automatically, **move** the lever into position A (spring-tensioned position) .

The warning light goes out. The high beam turns on.

Information message

The messages and information are indicated in the instrument cluster display.

M **Fault: Light Assist**

S **LIGHT ASSIST FAULT**

Seek help from a specialist garage.

M **Light Assist: clean the windscreen!**

S **WINDSCREEN PLEASE CLEAN**

Check for any obstacles on the windscreen in the viewing area of the sensors of camera.

WARNING

The system only serves as a support and does not relieve the driver of his or her responsibility to check the headlights and low beam and, if necessary, to switch on the lights depending on the light conditions. The manual operation may be required for example, in the following situations.

- When visibility is poor, e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall.
- Passing poorly lit road users, e.g. cyclists or pedestrians.
- When driving around "sharp" bends.
- Driving through poorly-lit locations.
- The camera or sensor viewing range is obstructed by an obstacle.

CAUTION

Do not attach any stickers or similar objects to the windscreen in front of the sensor or camera to avoid impairing the functions of the systems.

Front and rear fog light

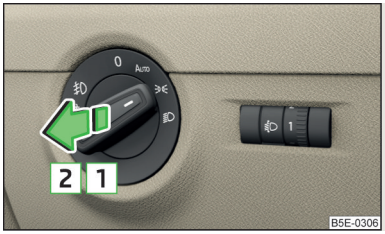


Fig. 59
Light switch – switch on front and rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

Turning fog lights on/off

› Turn the light switch to position **AUTO**, or » Fig. 59.
› Pull the light switch to position 1; the indicator lamp in the light switch illuminates.

It is switched off in reverse order.

Turning the rear fog lamp on/off

› Turn the light switch into position **AUTO** or » Fig. 59.
› Pull the light switch to position 2; the indicator lamp in the light switch illuminates.

It is switched off in reverse order.

If the vehicle is not fitted with fog lights, the rear fog light is switched on by pulling out the light switch directly to the only possible setting.

Note

While driving with an accessory connected to the trailer socket (e.g. trailer, bike carrier) only the equipment is illuminated by the fog light. The towing device must be installed at the factory or from the ŠKODA original accessories.

Fog lights with the CORNER function

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

The function CORNER provides better illumination of the nearby environment when turning, manoeuvring or anything similar.

The function automatically switches on the fog lights on each side of the vehicle, if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply [1].
- ✓ The vehicle speed is below 40 km/h.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.
- ✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

Note

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

The function COMING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door.

The function LEAVING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control unit.

The function switches the light on only if there is poorer visibility and the light switch is in the position **AUTO**.

Enabling / disabling and setting functions

The functions and setting of the lighting duration can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment system » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

CAUTION

- Poorer visibility is evaluated by a motor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the interior mirror sensor. Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen in order to avoid impairing the function or its reliability.
- If this option is always enabled, then the battery is heavily loaded.

Hazard warning light system

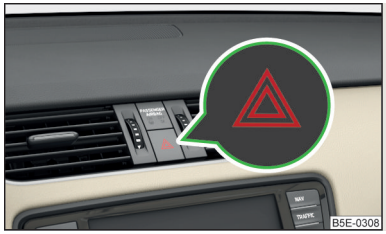


Fig. 60
Button for hazard warning light system

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

The hazard warning lights make other road users aware of your vehicle.

The function switches on all indicators.

Switching on/off

› Press the button ⚠ » Fig. 60.

When you turn it on the warning light ⚠ flashes in the button and at the same time the warning lights ⇔ in the instrument cluster.

The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

If one of the airbags is deployed, the hazard warning light system will switch on automatically.

The automatic activation of hazard warning lights can take place during a heavy braking. After starting or accelerating the hazard warning system is automatically switched off.

[1] If both switch-on conditions are conflicting, for example, if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

When the hazard warning system is on and the indicator light is switched on (e.g. when turning), the hazard warning lights are switched off temporarily and only the turn signal flashes on the relevant side of the vehicle.

Parking lights

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

The side light is provided for lighting of the parked vehicle.

Switching on the side light on one side
› Switch off the ignition.
› Press the control lever to position A or B as far as the stop » Fig. 55 *on page 69*.

The parking lights on the right or left side of the vehicle are turned on.

Switching on the side light on both sides
› With the ignition switched on turn the light switch to position .
› Switch off the ignition.
› Lock the vehicle.

After pulling out the ignition key and opening the driver's door, an audible warning sounds.

After a few seconds or after closing the driver's door, the audible alarm is turned off, but the parking lights will remain switched on.

CAUTION
- Turning on the parking light means the battery is heavily loaded.
- The parking light cannot be turned off automatic due to the low battery charge level.
- If the two-sided parking lights are switched on when the ignition is off, then there is no automatic switching off of the parking light.

Driving abroad

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

When driving in countries with opposing traffic system (traffic on the left/right), your headlights may dazzle oncoming traffic. In order to avoid this, the headlights must be adjusted at a specialist garage.

You can adjust the Xenon headlights yourself by setting the travel mode in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Interior lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front interior light 74
Rear interior lights 75
Front door warning light 75
Entry space lighting 75

The inner lighting also works if the ignition is switched off.

With the ignition off, the light turns off automatically after about 10 minutes.

Front interior light

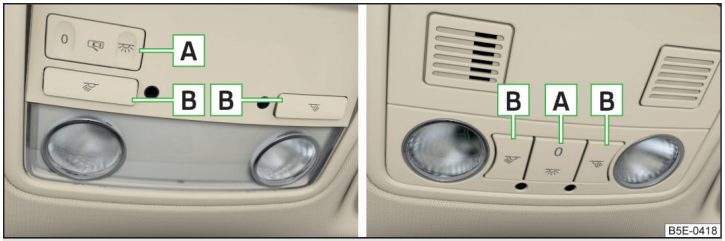


Fig. 61 **Operation of the front light: Version 1 / version 2**

Positions of the rocker switch A » Fig. 61
- Switching on
- Automatic operation (centre position)
- 0 Switching off

There is no icon available for the centre position (automatic operation) in Version 2.

Switch for turning the reading lights B on / off » Fig. 61
- Reading lamp left
- Reading lamp right

Automatic operation of the lamp – position
The system is **turned on** when any of the following is present.
- The vehicle is unlocked.
- One of the doors is opened.
- The ignition key is removed.

The system is **turned off** when any of the following is present.
- The vehicle is locked.
- The ignition is switched on.
- About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Rear interior lights

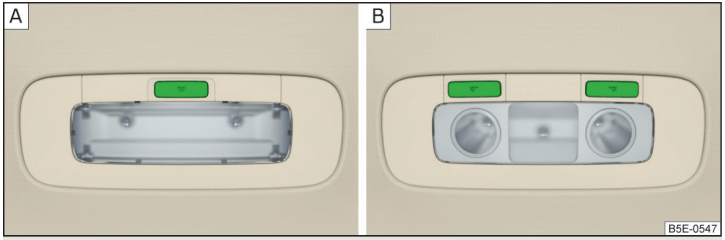


Fig. 62 **Rear interior lights: Version 1 / version 2**



Fig. 63
Rear interior lights: Version 3

Switch for rear lights (variant 1) » Fig. 62- A
Switching on/off

Switch for rear lights (variant 2) » Fig. 62- B
Switching left reading lamp on/off
Switching right reading lamp on/off

Positions of the lens of the rear lights (variant 3) » Fig. 63
Switching on
Automatic operation (centre position) [1]
Switching off

The rear lights - variant 1/variant 2 are operated together with the front lights.
- When the front interior lighting is **switched on**, the rear interior lighting also turns on automatically.
- When the front interior lighting is **switched off**, the rear interior lighting can be turned on/off as required.

Front door warning light



Fig. 64
Front door warning light

The warning light » Fig. 64 turns on when the front door is opened.

The warning light turns off when the front door is closed.

There is a reflector installed here on some vehicles instead.

Entry space lighting

The lighting is positioned on the bottom edge of the exterior mirror and can illuminate the entry area of the front door.

The light turns off after the vehicle is unlocked or the front door opens, depending on external conditions and the particular vehicle equipment.

[1] In this position, apply the same rules to the rear interior light as for the front interior light » page 74.

The lighting switches off around 30 seconds after the front door is closed or the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

If the entry light is on, do not touch its cover – risk of burns!

Visibility

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen and rear window heater 76
Sun visors in the front 76
Sun screen 77

WARNING

Make sure that the view outside is not covered by ice, snow, mist or other objects.

Windscreen and rear window heater



Fig. 65 **Buttons for the front and rear window heater: manual air conditioning, heating / Climatronic**

Read and observe ! on page 76 first.

The heating for quick defrosting and ventilation of the front /and rear window.

The heating can be activated with the ignition on.

The heating is turned on after the engine has started.

Buttons for the heating in the centre console (depending on vehicle equipment) » Fig. 65

- Activate/deactivate the heated rear window
- Activate/deactivate the windshield heating

When the heater is activated, a lamp illuminates inside or below the button.

The heater automatically switches off after approximately 10 minutes.

If the engine is switched off when the heating is on and turned back on again within 10 minutes, the heating is continued.

Note

- If the on-board voltage decreases, the heating switches off automatically » page 204, *Automatic load deactivation*.
- If the light within or below the button flashes, the radiator will not work because of the low state of the battery.
- If the Climatronic recognises that the windshield could fog up, the windshield heating is automatically switched on. This function can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Sun visors in the front

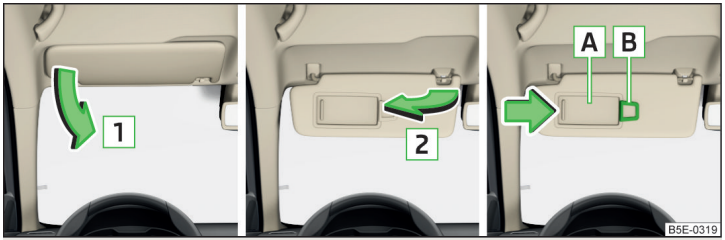


Fig. 66 **Fold down visor / flip up visor / make-up mirror and Park Memo Holder**

Read and observe ! on page 76 first.

Operation and description of the sun visor » Fig. 66

1 Fold down the cover

2 Swivel cover towards the door

A Make-up mirror with cover (the cover can be pushed in the direction of the arrow)
B Parking ticket holder

WARNING
When objects are attached to the sun visor, the visor can not be pivoted to the side windows. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.

Sun screen

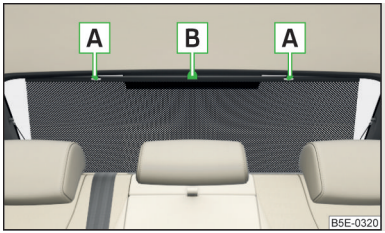


Fig. 67
Sun screen

Read and observe ! on page 76 first.

The sun screen is located in a housing on the luggage compartment cover.

Extending
› Pull the sun screen on the handle B » Fig. 67and hang it in the holder A.

Retracting
› Remove the sun blind from the handle B » Fig. 67 out of the bracket and hold it in such a way that it can roll up slowly into the housing without being damaged.

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen wipers and washers 78
Headlight cleaning system 78

The windscreen wipers and the wash system only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet and boot are closed.

Winter setting of the windscreen wiper
If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. For this reason we recommend adjusting the windscreen wipers in winter so that they can be folded out from the windscreen easily.

▸ Switch on the windscreen wipers.
▸ Switch off the ignition.

The windscreen wipers remain in the position in which they were when switching off the ignition.

The service position can also be used as a winter position » page 225.

WARNING
- Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving » page 225.
- Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. Otherwise the window washer fluid could freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.

CAUTION
- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- Carefully peel frozen wiper blades off the pane.
- Remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before driving.
- If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.
- Do not switch on the ignition if the front wiper arms are retracted. The wiper arms could damage the paint on the bonnet.
- If there is an obstacle on the windscreen, the wiper will try to push away the obstacle. The wiper stops automatically after 5 attempts to eliminate the obstacle, in order to avoid a damage to the wiper. Remove the obstacle and switch the wiper on again.

Note

▪ Each time the ignition switches off for the third time, the position of the windscreen wipers changes. This counteracts an early fatigue of the wiper rubbers.
▪ The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than approx. +10 °C.

Windscreen wipers and washers

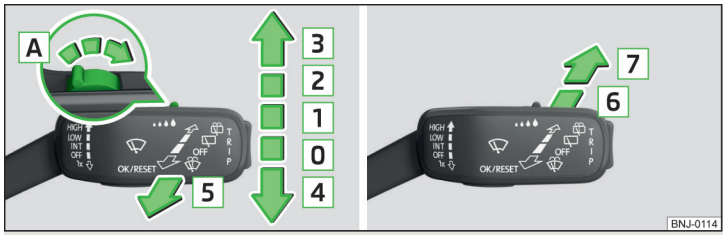


Fig. 68 **Operation of wiper and washer: front / rear**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

Lever positions

0 **OFF** Wipers off
1 **INT** Depending on equipment fitted:
- Periodic windscreen wiping
- Automatic windscreen wiping in rain

2 **LOW** Slow windscreen wiping
3 **HIGH** Rapid windscreen wiping
4 **1x** Flick windscreen wiping, service position of the wiper arms (spring-loaded position)
5 Spraying and wiping the windscreen (sprung position)
6 Wiping the rear window
7 Spraying and wiping the rear window (sprung position)
A Depending on equipment fitted:
- To set the wiper interval for the windscreen
- Sensitivity setting of the automatic wiping with rain

By setting the switch in the direction of the arrow wipers sweep more often.

Spraying and wiping the windscreen
After releasing the operating lever, the wipers will make from 2 to 3 wiper strokes.

At a speed of more than 2 km/h, the wiper wipes once again 5 seconds after the last wiper stroke in order to wipe the last drops from the windscreen. This function can be activated/deactivated by a specialist garage.

Spraying and wiping the rear window
After releasing the operating lever, the wipers will make from 2 to 3 wiper strokes.

The operating lever remains in position **6**.

Activating / deactivating of the automatic windscreen wiping with rain
Automatic windscreen wiping in rain can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Automatic rear window wiping
If the lever is in position **2** or **3** » Fig. 68, the rear window is wiped every 30 or 10 seconds if the vehicle's speed exceeds 5 km/h.

If automatic windscreen wiping in rain is activated (the operating lever is in the position **1**) the function is only active if the windscreen wipers operate in continuous mode (no break between each wiping process).

The automatic rear wiper can be activated/deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Note

▪ If the operating lever is in the position **2** or **3** and the speed of the vehicle drops below 4 km / h, the wiping speed is reduced. The original wiping speed is restored step by step when the speed of the vehicle exceeds 8 km/h.
▪ The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

Headlight cleaning system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

To clean the headlights, the headlamp is also sprayed after every ten squirts. ▸

The headlight washer system works under the following conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The low beam is switched on.
✓ The outside temperature is about -12° C to +39° C.

To ensure the correct functioning of the system, even in winter, this needs to be regularly cleared of snow and ice, e.g. free with a de-icing spray.

Rear mirror

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior mirror dimming 79
Exterior mirrors 80

WARNING

▪ Convex (curved outward) or aspheric exterior mirrors increase the field of vision. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
▪ Whenever possible use the interior mirror for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.

WARNING

The mirrors with automatic dimming contain an electrolyte liquid which can escape if mirror glass is broken.
▪ The leaking electrolytic fluid can irritate the skin, eyes and breath apparatus.
▪ If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. If necessary get medical assistance.

Interior mirror dimming

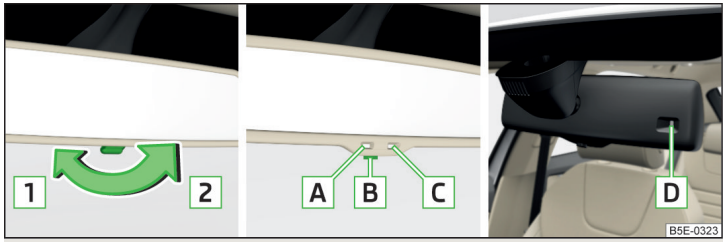


Fig. 69 **Interior mirror: manual dimming/auto-dimming/light sensor**

Read and observe ! on page 79 first.

Mirrors with manual dimming » Fig. 69

1 Basic position of the mirror
2 Mirror blackout

Mirror with automatic dimming » Fig. 69

A Warning light - lights when dimming is activated
B Switch for the activation of the automatic mirror dimming
C Light sensor
D Light sensor on the back of the mirror

Mirror with automatic dimming

If the automatic dimming is enabled, the mirror dims automatically depending on the light falling on the sensors.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror always moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

Do not attach external devices (e.g. navigation systems) on to the windscreen or in the vicinity of the interior mirror » !.

WARNING

▪ The illuminated display of an external navigation device can lead to operational faults to the automatic dimming interior mirror – risk of accident.
▪ The automatic dimming mirror only functions smoothly if the light falling on the sensors is not impaired, e.g. by the rear sun roller blind.

Exterior mirrors

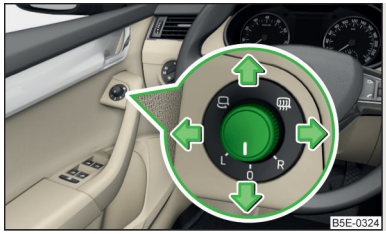


Fig. 70
Exterior mirror operation

Read and observe ! on page 79 first.

The rotary knob can be moved into the following positions (depending on vehicle equipment)

L Adjust the left mirror
R Adjust the right mirror
0 Switch off mirror control
Mirror heater
Fold in both mirrors housings, to fold back move the knob to another position

The **mirror heating** only works when the engine is running.

Adjust the position
The mirror can be adjusted to the desired position by moving the knob in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 70.

The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

If the electrical mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.

Synchronous adjustment of the mirror
› The synchronous adjustment of the mirrors is activated in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.
› Turn the knob for the mirror control to the position for the driver mirror adjustment.
› Adjust the mirror to the desired position.

Automatically folding in and folding back both exterior mirrors
The exterior mirrors are automatically collapsed after locking the vehicle in the park position.

The exterior mirrors are folded out automatically after unlocking the vehicle in the driving position.

Automatic folding in / out of both mirror housings can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Mirror with automatic dimming
The exterior mirror blackout is controlled together with the automatic dimming interior mirror » page 79.

Memory function for mirrors
Applies to vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

It is possible to save the current setting of the exterior mirror when saving the driver's seat position with » page 84, *Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat*or » page 84, *Memory function of the remote control key*.

Fold in passenger's mirror
Applies to vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat.

The passenger-side mirror can be tilted to the stored position to improve the view to the curb when reversing.

Operating conditions.
✓ The function is activated in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.
✓ The mirror setting has been previously stored, » page 84, *Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat*or » page 84, *Memory function of the remote control key*.
✓ The reverse gear is engaged.
✓ The knob for the mirror control is in the position for the passenger mirror adjustment.

The mirror returns to its initial position after the rotary knob is put into another position or if the speed is more than 15 km/h.

! WARNING
Do not touch the exterior mirror surfaces, if the exterior mirror heating is switched on - hazard of burning.

CAUTION

- Never adjust exterior mirrors with the fold-in function by hand - risk of damaging the electric mirror actuator!
- When the mirror is swung by external influences (due to impact during manoeuvring, for example), then first **fold-in** the mirror by turning the knob and wait for a loud clapping noise.

Seats and head restraints

Seats and head restraints

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manually adjusting seats 82
Adjusting the front seats electronically 82
Head restraints - adjusting height 82
Headrests - removing and installing 83
Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat 84
Memory function of the remote control key 84

WARNING

- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
- The electric front seat adjustment is functional even with the ignition off. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle - there is a danger of injury!
- Do not transport any objects on the front passenger seat except objects (e.g. child safety seat) provided for this purpose – risk of accident!

Note

- After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.
- For safety reasons, it is not possible to store the seat position in the electric seat memory and remote control key memory if the inclination angle of the seat backrest is more than 102° in relation to the seat cushion.
- Each time you store the position of the electrically adjustable driver's seat and exterior mirrors, the existing setting is deleted.

Manually adjusting seats

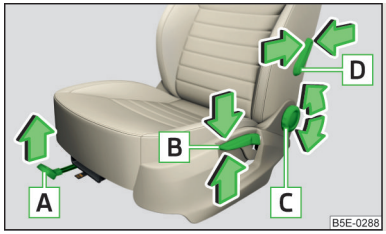


Fig. 71
Control elements on the seat

Read and observe ! on page 81 first.

The seats can be adjusted by the respective operating element being pulled in the direction of arrows, pressed or rotated.

Control elements on the seat » Fig. 71

A Adjusting the seat in the longitudinal direction (after releasing the control lever must lock audibly)

B Adjusting the seat height[1)]

C Adjust the tilt of the backrest (do not lean on the backrest when adjusting)

D Setting the extent of the curvature of the lumbar support

Adjusting the front seats electronically

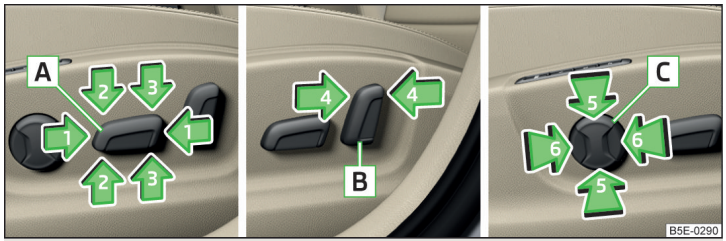


Fig. 72 **Control elements on the seat**

Read and observe ! on page 81 first.

The seats can be adjusted by the respective operating element being pressed in the direction of area of the arrow.

Control elements on the seat » Fig. 72

A seat adjustment
- **1** - Move in the longitudinal direction
- **2** - Change in inclination
- **3** - Change in height

B Adjusting the seat backrest
- **4** - Change in inclination

C Adjusting lumbar support
- **5** - Change curvature
- **6** - The degree of curvature change

Note

If the setting procedure is interrupted, you will need to press the operating element again.

Head restraints - adjusting height

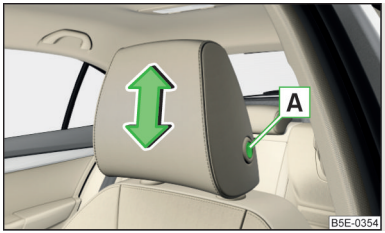


Fig. 73
Front headrest: moving up and down

[1)] Only valid for some countries.

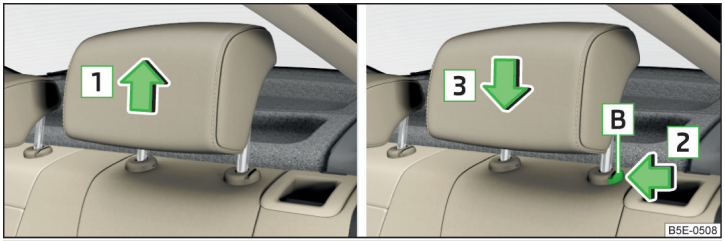


Fig. 74 **Rear headrest: moving up/down**

Read and observe ! on page 81 first.

Adjust front support

› Press and hold the safety button A » Fig. 73.
› Move the supports into the required position.

Adjust rear support

› Grasp the restraint and move **upwards** in the direction of 1 » Fig. 74.
› In order to push the supports **downward**, press the safety button B in the direction of arrow 2 and hold down.
› Press in the support in the direction of arrow 3.

! WARNING

Please note the following points about the headrest settings » page 8, *Correct and safe seated position.*

i Note

- The middle rear head restraint is only adjustable in two positions.
- In sports seats, the headrests are integrated into the seat backrests and cannot be adjusted in height.

Headrests - removing and installing

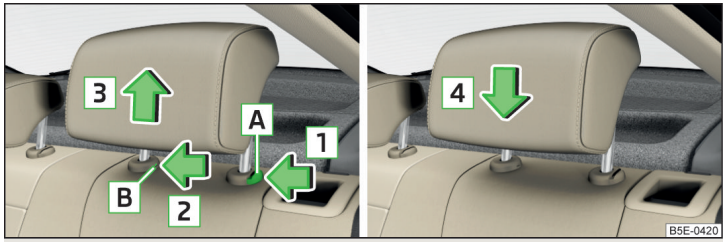


Fig. 75 **Rear headrests: removing/fitting**

Read and observe ! on page 81 first.

Only the real head restraints may be removed or installed.

Before removing and fitting the headrests, fold the corresponding seat backrest forward slightly » page 87.

Removing

› Pull the head restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
› Press the locking button A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 75 , while at the same time using a flat screwdriver with a max. width of 5 mm to press the securing button in opening B in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the restraint in the direction of arrow 3.

Fitting

› Push the support in the headrest in the direction of arrow 4 until the locking button clicks into place.

! WARNING

Please note the following points about the headrest settings » page 8, *Correct and safe seated position.*

! CAUTION

Store the head restraints that were removed in such a way that they cannot be damaged or soiled.

i Note

In sports seats, the headrests are integrated into the seat backrests and cannot be removed.

Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat

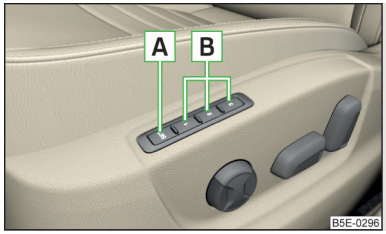


Fig. 76
Memory buttons and SET button

Read and observe ! on page 81 first.

The pre-set buttons on the driver's seat make it possible to save the driver's seat and exterior mirror positions.

Each of the three memory buttons B » Fig. 76 can be assigned a set position.

Storing driver's seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward
› Switch on the ignition.
› Adjust the seat and the two mirrors to the desired position.
› Press the **SET** button (Position A » Fig. 76).
› Within 10 seconds after pressing the **SET** button, press the desired memory button B.

An acknowledgement sound confirms the storage.

Saving front passenger mirror settings for reversing
The function of lowering the passenger mirror surface when reversing must be enabled in Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Vehicle Settings* .

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the required memory button B » Fig. 76.
› Turn the knob for the external mirror control to the position for the passenger side mirror adjustment » page 80.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position.
› Disengage reverse gear.

The set position of the exterior mirror is stored.

Retrieving the saved setting

Ignition	Driver's door	Press the required memory button B » Fig. 76
Switched off	Open	Short
	Closed	Long
Activated	Open	Long
	Closed	Long

Stopping the ongoing adjustment
▸ Press any button on the driver's seat or the button on the remote control key.

Note
Each time new seat and exterior mirror settings for forward travel are saved, the passenger exterior mirror setting for reverse travel must also be saved again.

Memory function of the remote control key

Read and observe ! on page 81 first.

The automatic storage of the driver's seat position and exterior mirror positions when locking the vehicle can be turned on in the memory of the remote control key (hereafter referred to as automatic storage function).

This function can also be enabled or disabled in the Infotainment» *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Enable automatic storage
› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
› Press and hold any memory button B » Fig. 76 *on page 84*.
› After the seat has assumed the position stored under this button, at the same time press the button on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful activation of the automatic storage function for each key is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Storing driver's seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forward
› Enable automatic storage.

When automatic storage is activated, the current positions of the driver's seat and the external mirrors are saved in the memory of the remote control key each time the vehicle is locked.

When the vehicle is next unlocked using the same key, the driver's seat and the external mirrors assume the positions stored in the memory of this key.

Saving front passenger mirror settings for reversing
The function of lowering the passenger mirror surface when reversing must be enabled in Infotainment » *Infotainment Owner´s Manual* , chapter *CAR - Vehicle Settings* .

› Unlock the vehicle with the relevant remote control key.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Turn the knob for the external mirror control to the position for the passenger side mirror adjustment » page 80.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position.
› Disengage reverse gear.

The adjusted position of the exterior mirror is stored in the remote control key memory.

Disable the function of automatic storage
› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
› Press the **SET** button (Position **A** » Fig. 76 *on page 84*) and hold.
› Press the button on the remote control key within 10 seconds.

The successful deactivation of the automatic storage function for each key is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment
› Press any button on the driver's seat or the button on the remote control key.

Seat features

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Seat heaters 85
Front armrest setting 86
Rear armrest setting 86
Folding front passenger seat 86
Seat backrests 87
Long cargo channel in the rear seat backrest 88

Seat heaters

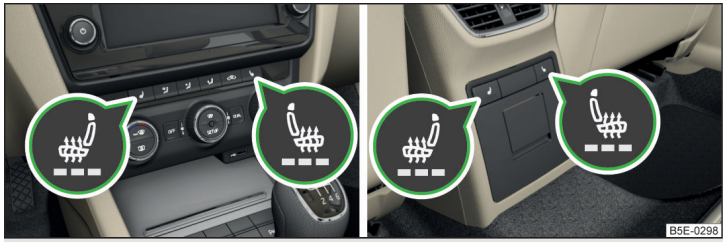


Fig. 77 **Buttons for heating the front seats/rear seats**

The seat backrests and surfaces of the front seats and the outer rear seats can be heated electrically.

The seat heating can only be switched on when the engine is running.

Buttons for the seat heating » Fig. 77
Left seat heating
Right seat heating

Switching on
› Press the button or » Fig. 77.

Pressing once switches the seat heating on at its maximum level.

With repeated pressing of the switch, the intensity of the heating is reduced until it is switched off.

The level of the seat heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights underneath/in the switch.

If the engine is switched off and then turned on again within 10 mins with the driver seat heating switched, then the driver's seat heating is automatically turned on again.

WARNING

If you have a subdued pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend not to use the seat heating. There may be difficult to heal burns. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

The following instructions must be observed to avoid damage to the seats.
- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- Do not turn on any of the seat heaters if seats are not occupied.
- Do not switch on the relevant seat heating if the seats have objects attached to or placed on them, for example a child seat, a bag, etc.
- When there are additional protective covers or protective covers mounted on each of the seats, do not turn the seat heating on.

Note

If the on-board voltage decreases, the seat heating switches off automatically » page 204, *Automatic load deactivation*.

Front armrest setting

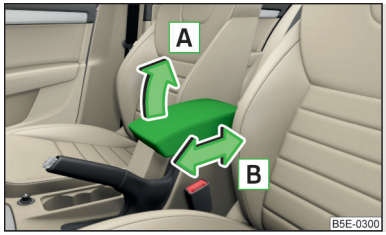


Fig. 78
Adjust armrest

The armrest is adjustable for height and length.

Lifting

› Lift the armrest in the direction of arrow A into one of the six locking positions » Fig. 78.

Folding down

› Lift the armrest in the direction of arrow A until it stops » Fig. 78.

› Fold down the rear armrest.

Move

› Move the cover into the desired position in the direction of the arrow B » Fig. 78.

Note

Push the armrest cover all the way back to the stop before applying the handbrake.

Rear armrest setting

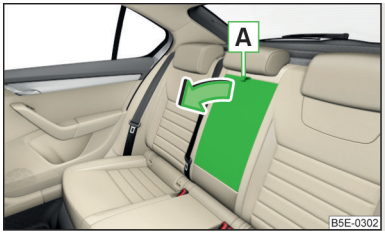


Fig. 79
Fold down armrest

The armrest can be folded down to increase comfort.

Lowering / raising

› Pull on the loop A » Fig. 79 and fold down the armrest forward in the direction of the arrow.

Raising takes place in reverse order.

Folding front passenger seat



Fig. 80
Folding the front passenger seat forward

The front passenger seat can be folded forward into a horizontal position.

Folding forward

› Place the lever in position 1 » Fig. 80.
› Fold the backrest in the direction of the arrow 2.

The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.

Folding backwards

› Place the lever in position 1 » Fig. 80.
› Fold the seat backrest in the opposite direction of the arrow 2.

The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.

WARNING

- The front passenger airbag should be switched off when transporting objects on the seat which was folded forwards » page 19.
- Adjust the seat backrest only when the vehicle is stationary.
- When moving the seat backrest, make sure the seat backrest has been properly secured – check by pulling on the seat backrest.
- If the seat backrest is folded, passengers may only be transported on the outer seat behind the driver.
- When moving the seat backrest, keep limbs away from between the seat cushion and seat backrest – risk of injury!
- Never transport the following items on the seat backrest when folded forwards.
  - Objects that could restrict the driver's view.
  - Objects which make it impossible for the driver to control the vehicle, e.g. if they roll under the pedals, or could protrude into the driver's zone.
  - Objects which could lead to injury to passengers due to a change of direction or braking manoeuvre when accelerating sharply.

Seat backrests

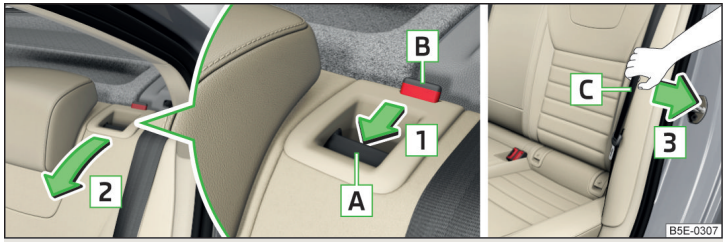


Fig. 81 **Fold the seat backrest forwards from the interior/pull the belt for the side trim**



Fig. 82 **Fold the backrest forward from the luggage compartment: Variant 1/variant 2**

The luggage compartment can be increased by folding back the seat. This can be done either from the interior or of from the luggage compartment.

The seat backrests can also be folded forward individually on vehicles with divided rear seats.

Before folding the seat backrests forwards, adapt the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded seat backrests.

If the front seats are too far back, we recommend that you have the rear head restraints removed before the seat backrests are folded forward » page 83.

Folding forward from the interior

› Press the release lever A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 81.

› Fold the backrest in the direction of the arrow 2.

In the **undivided** seat back, press the release handles A on both sides of the seat back at the same time.

Folding forward from the luggage compartment
There is a lever on the **left** side of the luggage compartment for unlocking the left rear seat backrest.

There is a lever on the **right** side of the luggage compartment for unlocking the right and the middle rear seat backrests.

Before folding the seat backrest forward, check that there are no objects on the rear seat.

On vehicles with a net partition, the left and then the right and middle rear seat backrest must first be unlocked. The net partition must be rolled up in the housing.

› Pull the lever in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 82.

The respective seat rest is unlocked and folded forward if applicable.

Folding backwards
› Pull the rear outer seat belt C to the side panel in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 81.
› Subsequently, fold back the backrest in the opposite direction of the arrow 2 until the release handle A clicks into place - by pulling on the seat backrest.
› Make sure that the red pin B is hidden.

In the **undivided** seat back, pull the two outer belts to the side panel. The release handles A must be locked audibly on both sides of the seat backrest. The red pen B should not be visible on any of the two sides of the seat back.

WARNING
- If rear seats are occupied, make sure that the respective seat backrests are properly engaged.
- After folding back the seat back, the seat belts must be ready for use.
- The seat backrests must be securely locked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment on sudden braking – risk of injury.
- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the backrest forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats.

CAUTION
- Ensure that the seat belts are not damaged when operating the seat backrests. Under no circumstances must the rear seat belts be jammed by the folded back seat backrests.
- Before folding the seat back forward, check whether there are any objects on the rear seat - there is a danger of damaging these items or the seat back and the seat.

Long cargo channel in the rear seat backrest

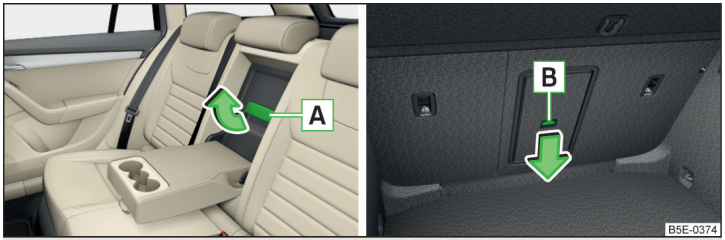


Fig. 83 **Open the cover: from the interior/from the luggage compartment**

After folding-up the rear armrest and cover, an opening in the seat backrest becomes visible through which the through-loading bag with skis can be pushed.

Opening from the interior
› Fold the rear armrest down (not as far as the stop) » Fig. 79 *on page 86*.
› Pull the handle A in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 83 and fold the cover forwards.

Opening from the boot
› Push the unlock button B in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 83 and fold the cover including the armrest forwards.

Closing
› Fold the cover and rear armrest upwards to the stop - the cover must click into place.

Ensure that the armrest is always locked into place after closing the cover. This is apparent as the red field above the unlocking button B » Fig. 83 is not visible from the boot.

WARNING

The through-loading channel is only intended for transporting skis that are placed in a properly secured, through-loading bag.

Transporting and practical equipment

Useful equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Car park ticket holder 90
Storage compartment on the driver's side 90
stowage compartments in the doors 90
Storage compartment in the front centre console 91
Cup holders 91
Cigarette lighter 92
Ashtray 92
12-Volt power outlet 93
Waste container 93
Multimedia holder 94
Storage compartment under the front arm rest 95
Glasses compartment 95
Storage compartment on the front passenger side 95
Clothes hook 96
Storage pockets on the backs of the front seats 96
Storage compartment in the rear centre console 97
230-volt socket 97
Removable through-loading bag 98
AUX and USB inputs 99

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving (when accelerating, cornering or with an incorrect driving action) and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – there is the risk of an accident.
- When driving, ensure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell. You would not be able to brake, operate the clutch pedal or accelerate - danger of causing an accident!

WARNING (Continued)

- No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
- Ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like. may only be placed in the ashtray!

Car park ticket holder

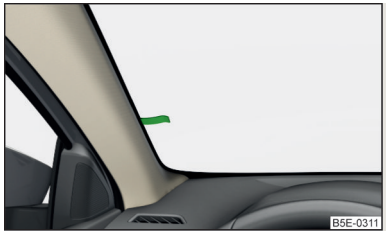


Fig. 84
Parking ticket holder

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

The parking ticket holder » Fig. 84 is designed e.g. for securing car park tickets.

WARNING

The attached note has to always be removed before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision.

Storage compartment on the driver's side



Fig. 85
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

Opening

› Raise the handle and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 85.

Closing

› Swivel the lid against the direction of the arrow until it clicks into place.

WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

stowage compartments in the doors

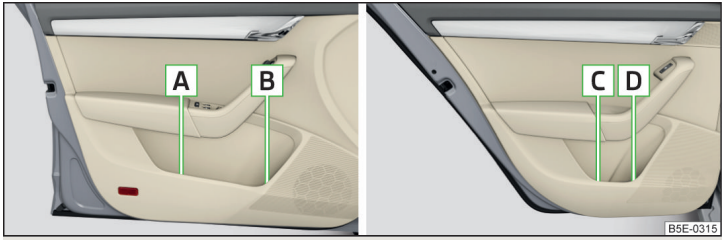


Fig. 86 **Storage compartments: in the front door/in the rear door**

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

Storage compartments » Fig. 86

A Storage compartment in the front door
B Bottle storage compartment with a capacity of max. 1.5 l in the front door
C Storage compartment in the rear door
D Bottle storage compartment with a capacity of max. 0.5 l in the rear door

WARNING

The storage compartment A » Fig. 86 is to be used exclusively for storing objects which do not project out because there is the danger of limiting the operating range of the side airbags.

Storage compartment in the front centre console

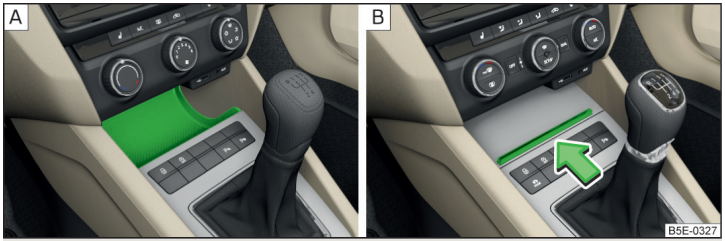


Fig. 87 **Open the open storage compartment / storage compartment**



Fig. 88
Phonebox

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

Storage compartment in the front centre console » Fig. 87

A Open

B Lockable

The storage compartment is provided for storing small items.

The lockable storage compartment contains an induction panel that is connected to the GSM antenna - the Phonebox » Fig. 88.

Open/close

› Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 87 - B.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Phonebox

When the telephone is inserted into the Phonebox, the telephone signal increases in strength by about 20%. This reduces the level of phone battery discharge and the electromagnetic radiation inside the vehicle.

› Place the telephone in the storage compartment B with its back on the induction panel » Fig. 88.

! WARNING

- The storage compartment is not a substitute for the ashtray and must also not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!
- For safety reasons, the storage compartment must always be closed when driving.

! CAUTION

- The Phonebox cannot be used as an alternative to connecting the telephone with the Infotainment.
- Protective cases or cases around the telephone placed in the storage compartment may interfere with the telephone signal strength.
- Metallic objects such as coins or keys under the telephone can affect the telephone signal strength.

Cup holders

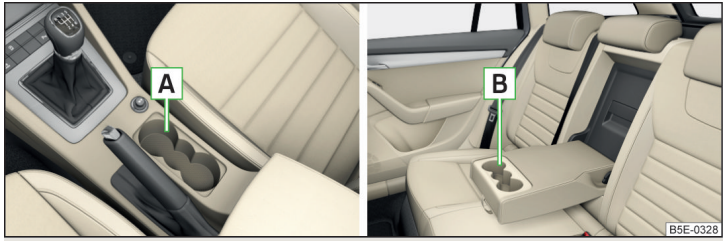


Fig. 89 **Cup holder: front/rear**

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the cup holder.

Placement of the cup holders » Fig. 89

A In the front centre console
B In the rear armrest

WARNING

- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.
- Never put hot cups in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!
- No objects should be placed in the holders that might endanger the vehicle's occupants if the vehicle brakes suddenly or the vehicle is in collision.

CAUTION

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

Cigarette lighter



Fig. 90
Cigarette lighter

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

Use

› Press the igniter in as far as the stop » Fig. 90.
› Wait until the igniter pops out.
› Remove the glowing igniter and use immediately.
› Place the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

WARNING

- The cigarette lighter also works if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. These could operate the lighter and get burned, start a fire or damage the interior.
- Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Improper usage can case burns.

Note

The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12 volt socket.

Ashtray

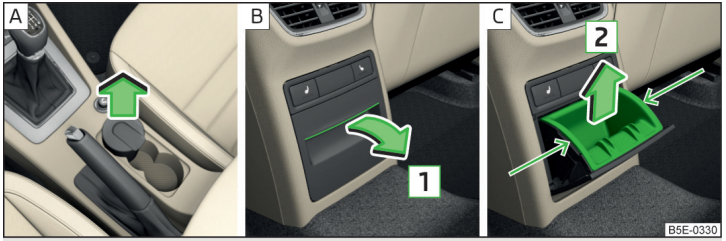


Fig. 91 **Remove front ashtray / open rear ashtray / remove rear ashtray insert**

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

The ashtray can be used for discarding ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like » !.

Removing/inserting the front ash tray

› When removing, do not hold the ashtray on the cover.
› Pull out the ashtray in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 91 - A.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Removing/inserting the rear ashtray insert

› Pull the upper part of the well and open the ashtray in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 91 - B .
› Grasp the insert in the area marked with the arrows and remove it in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 91 - C.

The insertion of the insert and closing of the ashtray is carried out in reverse order.

WARNING

Never place hot or flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

12-Volt power outlet

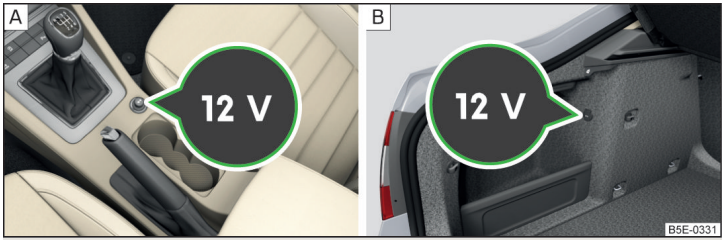


Fig. 92 **Cover of the 12 volt power outlet: in the front centre console/ in the boot**

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

Overview of the 12-volt socket » Fig. 92

A In the front centre console

B In the luggage compartment

Use

› Remove the socket cover » Fig. 92 - A.

Or

› Open the socket cover » Fig. 92 - B.

› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

WARNING

Instructions for devices connected to the sockets.

- Safely stow all devices during the journey to prevent them from being thrown around the interior in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident – risk of death!
- The devices may warm up during operation – risk of injury or fire! If the device becomes too hot, switch it off and disconnect it from the power supply immediately.

WARNING

When using the 12-volt sockets, the following notes are to be observed.

- The socket also works if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.
- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.

CAUTION

- The sockets can only be used for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts, otherwise the electrical system of the vehicle may be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Switch off the devices connected to the power sockets before you switch the ignition on or off and before starting the engine, to avoid damage from voltage fluctuations.

Waste container

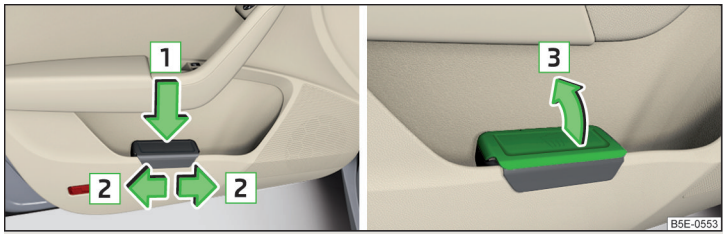


Fig. 93 **Waste container: inserting and moving/opening**

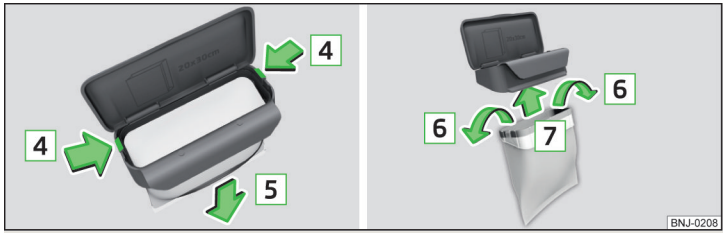


Fig. 94 **Replacing the bags**

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

The waste container can be inserted into the slots in the doors.

Insert waste container

› Position the waste container at the front edge of the slot.
› Push the waste container to the back in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 93.
› Move the waste container in the direction of the arrows as required 2.

Remove the waste container

› Remove the waste container in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 » Fig. 93.

Open/close waste container

› Remove the cover in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 93.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Replace bags

› Remove the waste container from the slot.
› Press the two locking lugs on the frame in the direction of arrow 4 » Fig. 94.
› Pull the bag together with the frame down in the direction of arrow 5.
› Remove the bag from the frame.
› Pull the new bag through the frame and pull it over the frame in the direction of arrow 6.
› Place the bag containing the frame in the direction of arrow 7 into the container body, so that the two lugs engage audibly to the frame.

! WARNING

Never use the waste container as an ashtray - risk of fire!

i Note

We recommend that you use 20x30 cm bags.

Multimedia holder

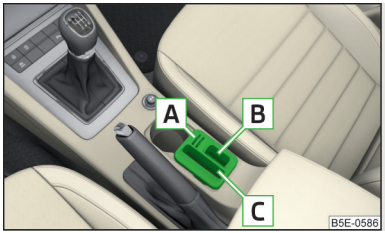


Fig. 95
Multimedia holder

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

Multimedia holder » Fig. 95

A Storage compartment for storing two coins
B Storage compartment for storing the vehicle key
C Storage compartment for storing a mobile phone

Depending on the equipment, the multimedia holder may only be accessible via storage compartment C.

! WARNING

Never use the multimedia holder as an ashtray - risk of fire!

Storage compartment under the front arm rest



Fig. 96
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

Opening
› Pull the armrest on the handle A in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 96.

Closing
› Raise the armrest in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 96 until it stops.
› Fold the armrest in the opposite direction of the arrow.

! WARNING
For safety reasons, the storage compartment should not be opened to an end stop while driving.

Glasses compartment

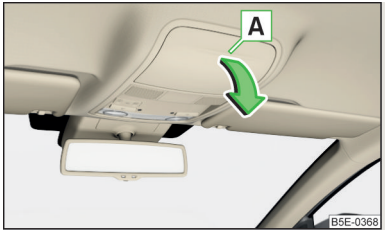


Fig. 97
Opening the glasses storage box

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

Opening
› Press on the lid of the glasses storage box in area A » Fig. 97.

The cover folds in the arrow direction.

Closing
› Swivel the lid of the glasses storage box against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 97 until it audibly clicks into place.

! WARNING
The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting glasses, and otherwise must be kept closed – risk of injury.

! CAUTION
- Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box - with high temperatures there is risk of damage.
- The box must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle – risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system.

Storage compartment on the front passenger side

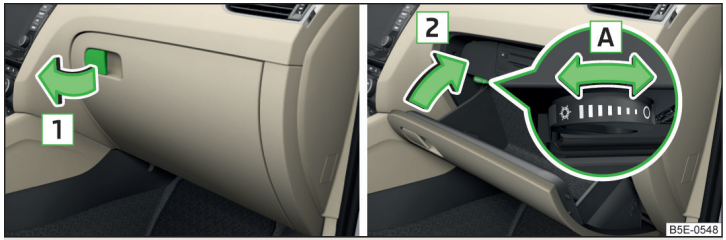


Fig. 98 **Tray open / operating air supply**

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

A pen and credit card holder is provided in the stowage compartment.

The storage compartment is equipped with an inner light that illuminates when opening and closing the storage compartment.

Opening
› Pull the cover handle in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 98 and fold down the cover.

Closing
› Swing the flap up opposite to the arrow direction 2 » Fig. 98 until it clicks into place.

Air supply operation

The air supply can be operated by turning the rotary switch in the direction of arrow A as far as the stop » Fig. 98.

☼ Opening

○ Closing

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

Opening the air inlet when the air conditioning system is on causes fresh or interior air to flow into the storage compartment.

WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Note

If not using the air supply in the storage compartment we recommend that you leave the air supply closed.

Clothes hook

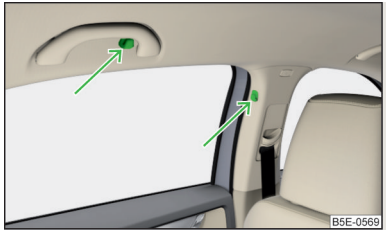


Fig. 99
Clothes hooks

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

The clothes hooks are located on the middle door pillars of the vehicle and on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors » Fig. 99.

The maximum permissible load of each of the hooks is 2 kg.

WARNING

- Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing hung up.
- To hang the clothes do not use hangers - there is a risk of limiting the effectiveness of head airbags.
- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.

Storage pockets on the backs of the front seats



Fig. 100
Map pockets

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

The storage pockets » Fig. 100 are intended for the storage of maps, magazines, etc.

WARNING

Never put heavy items in the map pockets – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Never put large objects in the map pockets, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges - risk of damaging the pockets and seat coverings.

Storage compartment in the rear centre console



Fig. 101
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

Open/close

› Pull the handle on the upper section of the recess and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 101.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

! WARNING

Never use the storage compartment as an ashtray - risk of fire!

230-volt socket

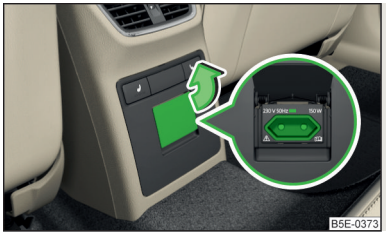


Fig. 102
Open the cover of the 230 volt power outlet

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

The 230-volt socket (hereinafter referred to as a socket) is provided for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a two-pin 230-volt plug and a total power consumption of up to 150 watts.

The socket is located in the rear centre console » Fig. 102.

The socket only works if the ignition is switched on.

Use

› Open the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 102.
› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

When plugging in the connector the child safety lock is unlocked and the outlet is activated.

Warning light

Display indicator light	Meaning
Illuminates green	The power socket is activated.
Flashes red	The power socket is temporarily deactivated.

The socket may be automatically deactivated for the following reasons

▸ Excessive current.
▸ Low battery charge state.
▸ High socket temperature.

If disabling reasons no longer exist, the socket is automatically activated. Then re-activate connected devices which are switched on » !.

! WARNING

- Improper use can lead to serious injury or fire. When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.
- Do not pour liquids into the power socket – risk of death! If fluid does manage to get into the power socket, completely dry out the socket before reuse.
- Safely stow away all connected devices during the journey to prevent them from being thrown around the interior in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident – risk of death!
- The connected devices may warm up during operation – risk of injury or fire! If the device becomes too hot, switch it off and disconnect it from the power supply immediately.
- The child lock on the power socket is unlocked when using adapters and extension cables which carry volts – risk of injury!
- Do no insert any conductive objects into the contacts of the power socket, e.g. knitting needs – risk of death!

CAUTION

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a two-pin 230V plug, with a total power uptake of up to 150 watt.
- Place the connector on the electrical device into the power socket as far as it can go to create a connection between the contacts.
- If the connector of the electrical device is not inserted fully into the power socket, the child safety lock might release, and the power socket be activated. The electrical device is still not supplied with power.
- The socket is temporarily disabled at engine start-up and the indicator light flashes red. After starting the engine, the power socket is re-activated automatically.
- Do not connect any lamps with neon filaments to the power socket - risk of damaging the lamp.
- A larger current surge may arise in some power supplies (e.g. for notebooks) when connecting them to the power socket- this will automatically deactivate the power socket. In this case, disconnect the power supply from the consumer and connect the power supply to the power socket first, followed by the consumer.
- The connected appliances may behave differently to when connected to the mains.

Removable through-loading bag

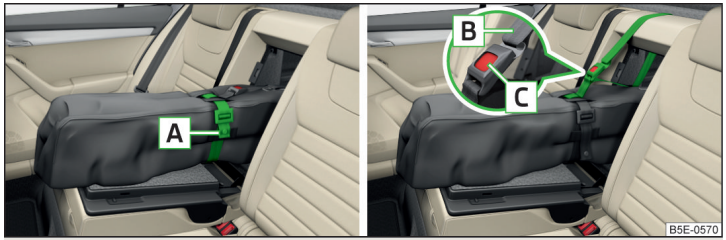


Fig. 103 **Tighten ribbon / secure through-loading bag**

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

The removable through-loading bag (hereinafter referred to as a through-loading bag) is used exclusively for transporting skis.

Stowing the through-loading bag and skis

› Open the boot lid.
› Fold the rear armrest and the cover in the seat backrest downwards » page 88.
› Place the empty, through-loading bag in the opening in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip is in the boot.
› Push the skis into the through-loading bag from the boot » !.
› Close the through-loading bag.

Securing the through-loading bag and skis

› Tighten the strap A on the free end around the skis in front of the bindings » Fig. 103.
› Fold the seat backrest a little forward.
› Guide the securing strap B through the opening in the seat backrest around the upper part of the seat backrest.
› Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the unlocking button clicks into place - check by pulling on the seat backrest.
› Insert the securing strap B into the lock C until it clicks into place.

WARNING

- After placing skis into the through-loading bag, you must secure the bag with the securing strap B » Fig. 103.
- The strap A must hold the skis tight.
- Make sure that the strap A holds all skis in front of the binding (see also the text on the through-loading bag).
- The total weight of the skis which are transported must not exceed 24 kg.

CAUTION

- Never fold and stow the through-loading bag when it is wet - risk of damaging the through-loading bag.
- The through-loading bag is designed for the transportation of up to four pairs of skis.
- Place the skis with the tips facing to the front and the sticks with the tips facing to the rear. into the through-loading bag.

AUX and USB inputs



Fig. 104
Installation locations of the AUX and USB inputs

Read and observe ! on page 89 first.

The AUX input is above the storage compartment in the front centre console and is identified with the **AUX** mark » Fig. 104.

The MDI input is above the storage compartment in the front centre console and is identified by the symbol ⇠.

Additional information» *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*.

Multimedia holder

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Install/remove ____ 99
Handle holder ____ 100

External devices (e.g. tablet, smartphone, etc.) measuring min. 122 mm and max. 195 mm can be secured in the support.

The maximum permissible load of the holder is 750 g.

! CAUTION

Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the holder - there is a risk of damage or functional impairment.

Install/remove



Fig. 105 **Position adapter/install holder**

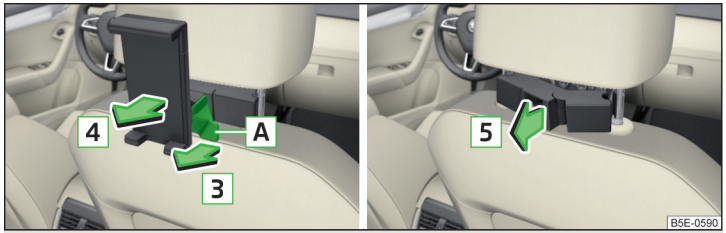


Fig. 106 **Remove holder/remove adapter**

Read and observe ! on page 99 first.

Fitting

› Attach the opened adapter to the guide rods of the headrest » Fig. 105.
› Clip in the adapter in the direction of arrow 1 » !.
› Clip the holder in the direction of arrow 2 into the adapter.

Removing

› Pull on the locking strap A in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 106.
› Remove the holder from the bracket in the direction of arrow 4.
› Press the adapter and remove from the guide rods of the headrest in the direction of arrow 5.

! WARNING

Carefully clip in the adapter - there is a risk of injuring your finger.

Handle holder

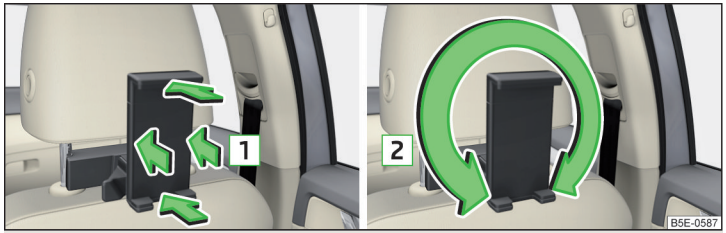


Fig. 107 **Tilt and rotate holder**

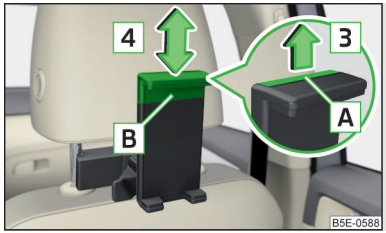


Fig. 108
Adjust holder size

Read and observe ! on page 99 first.

Tilt and rotate holder
The holder may be tilted 30° in the direction of arrow 1 and rotated through 360° in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 107.

Adjust holder size
› Pull out the securing tab A in the direction of arrow 3 and move part B in direction of arrow 4 to the desired position » Fig. 108.

Luggage compartment and transport of cargo

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fastening elements 101
Fixing nets 102
Multifunction pocket 102
Folding double hooks 103
Foldable hook 103
Floor covering 103
Floor covering on both sides 103
Luggage net 104
Luggage compartment cover 104
Roll-up cover 105
Storage compartment with cargo element 106
Storage compartments under the floor covering 106
Multi-function pocket 107
Class N1 vehicles 107

When transporting cargo the following the instructions must be adhered to
- When transporting heavy objects, the driving characteristics change due to the shift in centre-of-gravity. The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.
- The cargo is stowed in the luggage compartment. To prevent this from moving it should be secured with suitable lashing straps to the lashing eyes or secured with fixing nets.
- Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
- Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
- The items carried in the luggage compartment must be stored in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward if any sudden driving or braking manoeuvres are undertaken – risk of injury!
- Tyre pressure is to match the load.
- When transporting loads in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats .

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an object with a weight of 4.5 kg produces an energy, which corresponds to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg " ".

Luggage compartment light
The warning light turns on when tailgate is opened.

The warning light turns off when the tailgate is closed.

If the boot lid is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks etc. as heavy objects are not e sufficiently secured - there is a risk of injury!
- If the cargo is tied down with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents.
- Loose cargo can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other road users.
- Loose cargo could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – danger of death!

CAUTION

- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks etc. - these could be damaged.
- Make sure that transported objects with sharp edges do not damage the threads of the following devices.
  - Rear window heater.
  - Rear window with an integrated antenna.
  - Integrated antenna in the rear side windows.

Fastening elements

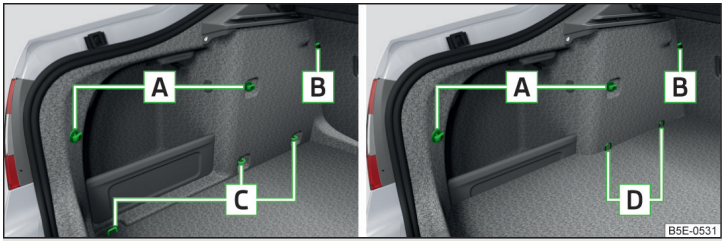


Fig. 109 **Fastening elements: Variant 1/variant 2 (G-TEC)**

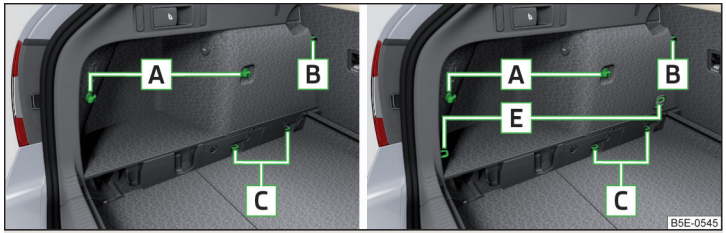


Fig. 110 **Fastening elements: Variant 3/variant 4**

Read and observe and on page 101 first.

The fasteners are located on both sides of the luggage compartment.

The maximum permissible static load of the individual lashing eyes C and E is 350 kg.

The maximum permissible load of the individual lashing eyes is D is 150 kg.

Overview of the fastening elements » Fig. 109 **and** » Fig. 110

- A Fasteners for securing fastening nets and multifunction pocket
- B Lashing eyes only for fastening fixing nets
- C Lashing eyes for fastening of cargo and fastening nets (in variant 1, the rear and centre eye is additionally provided for securing the multifunctional bag)
- D Lashing eyes for fastening cargo and fastening nets
- E Lashing eyes for fastening cargo and fastening nets

The lashing eyelet B is located behind the folding rear seat backrest .

Fixing nets

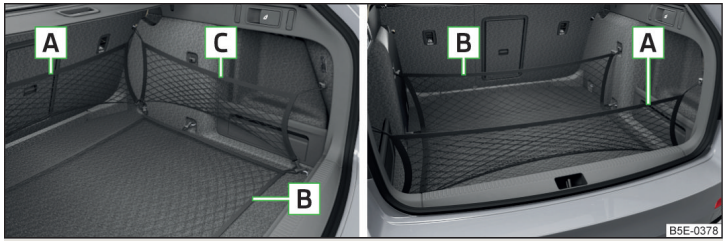


Fig. 111 **Fastening examples for nets**

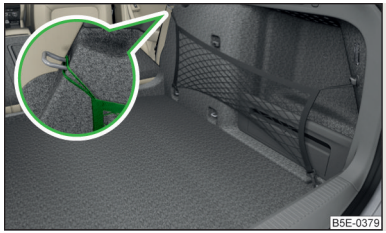


Fig. 112
Fastening example for vertical pockets

Read and observe ! and ! on page 101 first.

Fastening examples for nets » Fig. 111

A Horizontal pocket
B Floor net
C Vertical pocket

The maximum permissible load of each of the nets is 1.5 kg.

If the vehicle is equipped with the variable loading floor and this is in the upper position, then the lashing eyes E » Fig. 110 *on page 101* can be used for attaching the nets.

! CAUTION

- Do not place any sharp objects in the nets – risk of damaging the net.
- For vehicles with lashing eyes D » Fig. 109 *on page 101*, only the following nets can be attached.
  - Horizontal pocket behind the seats.
  - Floor net, which can be attached to the rear fastening elements A » Fig. 109 *on page 101* in the rear area.

Multifunction pocket

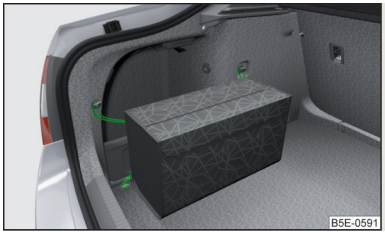


Fig. 113
Securing the multifunction pocket

Read and observe ! and ! on page 101 first.

The pocket » Fig. 113 can be secured to the fastening elements A and the rear and centre lashing eyes C » Fig. 109 *on page 101*.

The maximum permissible load for the bag attached to the fastening element is 3 kg.

! CAUTION

In vehicles with a variable loading floor, it is not possible to attach the bag to the fastening elements.

Folding double hooks



Fig. 114
Folding double hooks

Read and observe ! and ! on page 101 first.

The folding double hook » Fig. 114 is used to fasten small items of luggage, e.g. bags.

The folding double hook can be located on either of the two sides of the luggage compartment, according to the model.

An item of luggage with a maximum weight of 5 kg can be attached to each side of the double hook.

Foldable hook

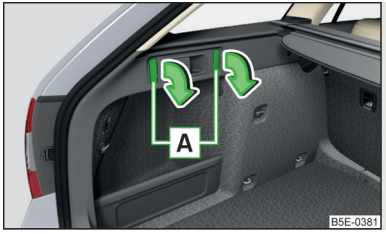


Fig. 115
Fold down hooks

Read and observe ! and ! on page 101 first.

Foldable hooks for hanging small items of luggage, such as bags, etc., are provided on both sides of the luggage compartment.

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7 kg.

Fold down hooks

› Press on the lower portion of the hook A and then fold it in direction of the arrow » Fig. 115.

Floor covering

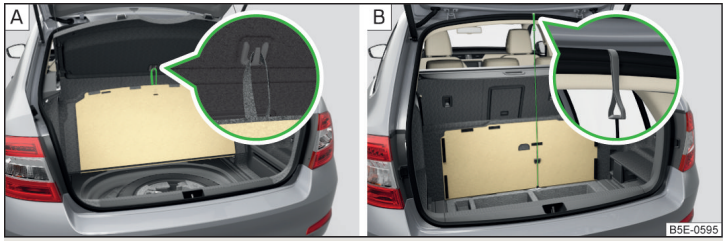


Fig. 116 **Fixing the floor covering: Version 1 / version 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 101 first.

Fastening options for the flooring » Fig. 116

A With the loop on a hook on the luggage compartment cover

B With the hook on the frame of the luggage compartment lid

! CAUTION

The floor covering can be fixed with Version 2 only if the variable loading floor is folded in the upper position » Fig. 128 *on page 108*.

Floor covering on both sides

Read and observe ! and ! on page 101 first.

You can fit a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment.

One side of the double-sided floor covering is made of fabric, the other side is washable (easy to maintain).

The washable side is used to transport wet or dirty items.

! CAUTION

The double sided floor covering can only be used in vehicles without the variable loading floor » page 107 - There is a risk of damage to the variable loading floor.

Note

For easier turning of the covering, use the loop attached.

Luggage net

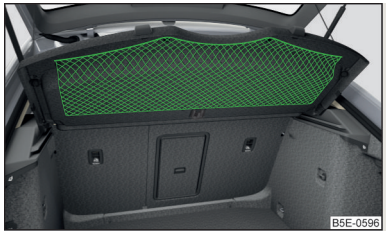


Fig. 117
Luggage net

Read and observe ! and ! on page 101 first.

The net at the bottom of the luggage compartment cover » Fig. 117 is provided for transporting light and soft items.

The maximum permissible load of the net is 1.5 kg.

CAUTION

Do not place any sharp objects into the net – risk of net damage.

Luggage compartment cover

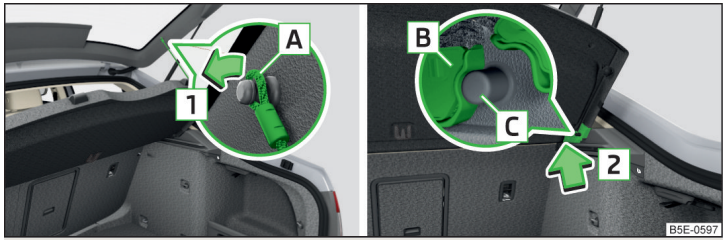


Fig. 118 **Remove the luggage compartment cover**



Fig. 119
Luggage compartment cover stowed behind the rear seats

Read and observe ! and ! on page 101 first.

If the support straps A » Fig. 118 are attached to the boot lid, then opening the lid will raise the boot lid cover (hereafter referred to as cover).

If you want to carry bulky goods, the cover can be removed from the vehicle, and may be stowed behind the rear seat backrests » Fig. 119.

Removing

› On both sides of the boot lid unhook the straps A in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 118.
› Hold the raised cover.
› Press on the two sides to the underside of the cover in the region of the mounts C.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.

Installing

› Place the cover on the contact surfaces of the side trim panel.
› Place the fixtures B on the cover above the brackets C on the side trim » Fig. 118.
› Press on the two sides to the upper side of the cover in the region of the mounts C.

The fixtures B must completely lock into place in the mounts C on both sides of the luggage compartment.

› On both sides of the boot lid hook the straps A in the opposite direction of arrow 1.

WARNING

No objects should be placed on the cover. This could endanger the vehicle occupants during sudden braking or vehicle impact.

CAUTION

- When closing the boot lid, jamming and damage to the cover or the side trim panel can occur if handled incorrectly. The following guidelines must be observed.
  - The recesses in the cover B » Fig. 118 must lock in the holders in the side trim panel C.
  - The items which are transported must not exceed the height of the cover.
  - The cover must not be jammed in the surrounding seal of the luggage compartment lid when it is in the raised position.
  - There must be no object in the gap between the cover in the raise position and the rear backrest.

Roll-up cover

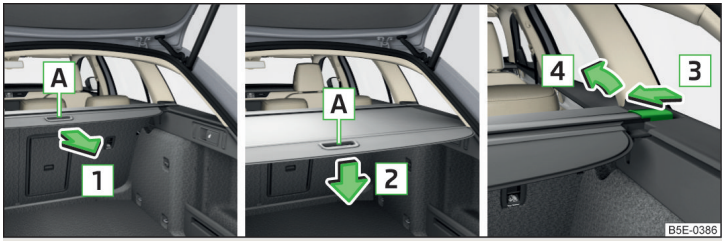


Fig. 120 **Roll-up cover: pull out/roll/remove**



Fig. 121 **Remove the side panels of the luggage compartment/stow the roll-up luggage compartment cover**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 101 first.

Extending

› Grasp the cover on the handle A and pull it out in the direction of the arrow 1 until it clicks » Fig. 120.

Retracting

› Push the cover in the area of handle A in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 120.

The cover rolls up automatically.

Removing/inserting

The fully rolled luggage compartment cover can be removed.

› Press on the side of the cross bar in the direction of arrow 3 and remove the cover in the arrow direction 4 » Fig. 120.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Stowage

If the vehicle is equipped with the variable loading floor, then the removable roll-up luggage compartment cover can be stowed in the recesses of the luggage compartment side trim.

› Fold the variable loading floor into the upper position » page 108.
› Remove the side covers of the luggage compartment in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 121.
› Remove the roll-up luggage compartment cover » Fig. 120.
› Insert the front part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover under a portion of the side trim D » Fig. 121 on the left.
› Fold the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the direction of arrow 2 » !.
› Replace the side trims of the luggage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow 1.
› Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position » page 108.

WARNING

No objects should be placed on the foldable boot cover. This could endanger the vehicle occupants during sudden braking or vehicle impact.

CAUTION

If you want to stow the roll-up luggage compartment cover and the roof rack **at the same time**, then it is necessary that the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment is **covering** the rear roof rack.

Storage compartment with cargo element

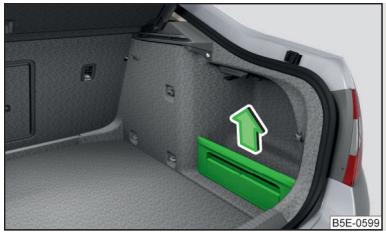


Fig. 122
Remove storage compartment

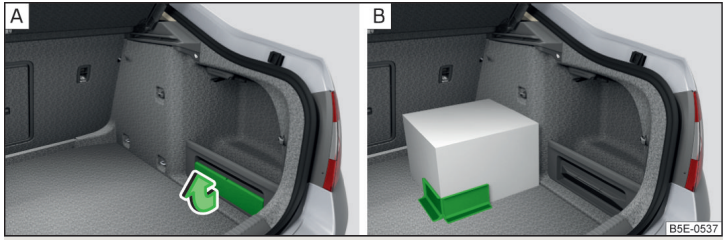


Fig. 123 **Removing cargo element/example on how to mount the load by means of the cargo element**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 101 first.

The storage compartment with cargo element may be located on either of the two sides of the luggage compartment, depending on the equipment variant.

The space behind the storage compartment is designed for storing small objects with a maximum total weight of 2.5 kg.

The cargo element is designed for attaching objects with a maximum total weight of 8 kg.

Storage compartment cover removal/fitting

› Remove the storage compartment cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 122.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Secure load

› Remove the cargo element (part of the storage compartment cover) in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 123- A.
› Attach the Cargo element with Velcro to the rear seats on the floor of the luggage compartment » Fig. 123 - B or attach to the fabric side of the double-sided floor covering.

! CAUTION

When using the storage compartment, take care not to damage it or the luggage compartment lining.

Storage compartments under the floor covering

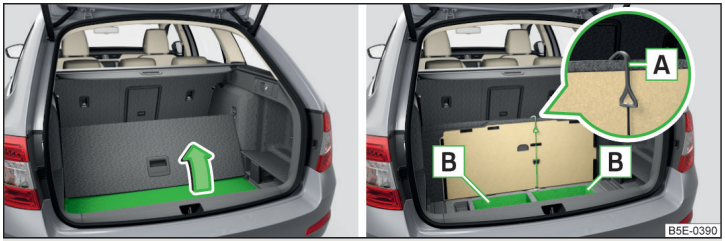


Fig. 124 **Lift floor covering/storage compartments under the floor covering**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 101 first.

The storage compartments B » Fig. 124 are located under the floor covering of the luggage compartment in vehicles without a spare wheel.

Every storage compartment B is designed for storing small objects of up to 15 kg. in weight in total.

Transport of cargo

› Dividing the luggage compartment with variable loading floor » page 109.
› Remove the fog floor covering in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 124.
› Fix the hook A to the top edge of the variable loading floor.

It is possible also to store objects with larger heights in the storage compartments B, thereby using the maximum height of the luggage compartment.

CAUTION

- The following instructions must be observed to avoid damage to the storage compartments.
  - Do not stored any sharp objects in the storage compartments.
  - Do not place any point-pressure in the storage compartment.
  - Carefully place the items in the storage compartments.

Multi-function pocket

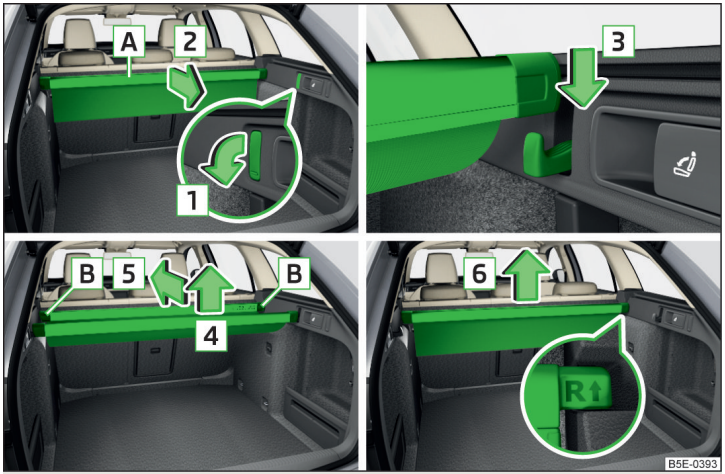


Fig. 125 **Multifunction pocket: pull out/insert/push in/remove**

Read and observe and on page 101 first.

The multifunction pocket (hereinafter referred to as pocket) is provided for storing clothing and light objects with no sharp edges.

The maximum permissible load of the multifunction box is 3 kg.

Removal and fitting

› Fold down the front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 125.
› Grasp the rear bar A with both hands and withdraw the pocket in arrow direction 2.
› Place the rear bar onto the two hooks that are folded forward in the direction of the arrow 3 all the way to the stop.

Pushing in

› Remove the rear bar from the hook in the direction of the arrow 4 » Fig. 125.
› Push in the pocket in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Place the rear bar against the front bar and press them together at both ends B.
› The front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment fold back opposite to the direction of arrow 1.

Removing/inserting

✓ The roll-up cargo cover must be removed.

› Remove the pocket from the fittings in the direction of the arrow 6 » Fig. 125.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

› When inserting, push the end of the bar marked R ↑ into the right receptacle and the end of the bar marked ↑ L into the left receptacle. The arrows should be pointing forward.

Class N1 vehicles

Read and observe and on page 101 first.

In class N1 vehicles that are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set that complies with the EN 12195 standard (1-4) must be used for fastening the load.

Proper functioning of the electrical installation is essential for safe vehicle operation. It is important to ensure that the electrical installation is not damaged during the adjustment process or when the storage area is being loaded and unloaded.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Positions of the variable loading floor 108
Fold up variable loading floor 108
Dividing the luggage compartment 109

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg. For the transport of heavy loads, adjust the variable loading floor in the lower position » Fig. 127 *on page 108*.

Positions of the variable loading floor



Fig. 126 **Set variable loading floor to the upper position / variable loading floor in the upper position**



Fig. 127 **Set variable loading floor to the lower position / variable loading floor in the lower position**

The variable loading floor can be set to the upper or lower position.

Set to the upper position

› Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle A » Fig. 126.
› Lift the variable loading floor about 20 cm, pull it to yourself and raise it in the direction of the arrow 1 to the level of the roll-up luggage compartment cover until it clicks.

After an audible click, the variable loading floor can be stowed in the upper position by pushing it forward.

The space available below the variable loading floor can be used for stowing objects such as the removed roll-up luggage compartment cover » page 105, the roof cross bars » page 111 etc.

Set into the lower position

› Check that there are no objects in the space under the variable loading floor.
› Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle A » Fig. 127.
› Lift the variable loading floor about 10 cm in the direction of the arrow 2 and pull it back in the direction of the arrow 3.

The variable loading floor moves automatically to the lower position where it can be stored by pressing it forward.

Fold up variable loading floor



Fig. 128 **Fold up variable loading floor / folded variable cargo floor in the upper position**

The variable loading floor can be folded up in both the lower and the upper position.

› Grasp the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle A » Fig. 128 and lift in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Fold up the variable loading floor by moving it in the direction of the arrow 2.

Dividing the luggage compartment

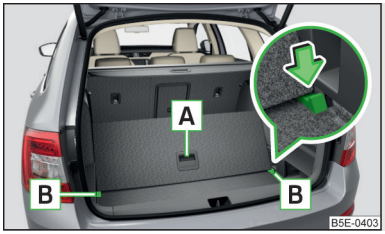


Fig. 129
Dividing the boot with variable loading floor

The luggage compartment can be divided with the variable loading floor in the lower and upper position.

› Raise the rear of the variable loading floor by the handle A » Fig. 129.
› Push the rear edge of the variable loading floor into the grooves B in the direction of the arrow.

The variable loading floor is secured against movements in the grooves B.

Net partition

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Using the net partition 109
Removing and refitting the net partition housing 110

The net partition can either be extracted from behind the rear seats or behind the front seats.

This chapter describes the procedure for extracting and rolling up the net partition behind the rear seats.

Installing and removing the net partition from **behind the front seats** is carried out in a similar way as behind the rear seats. Before pulling out the net partition, the rear seat backs are to be folded forwards. After rolling up the net partition into the housing, the rear seat backs are folded back » page 87.

Using the net partition

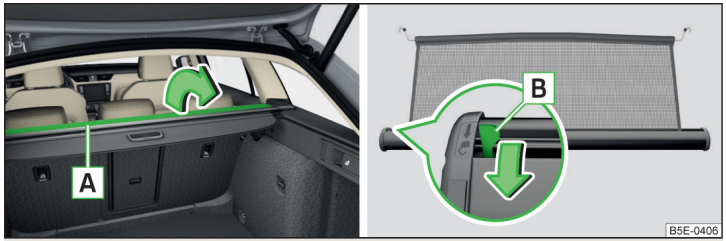


Fig. 130 **Open part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover / release lever**

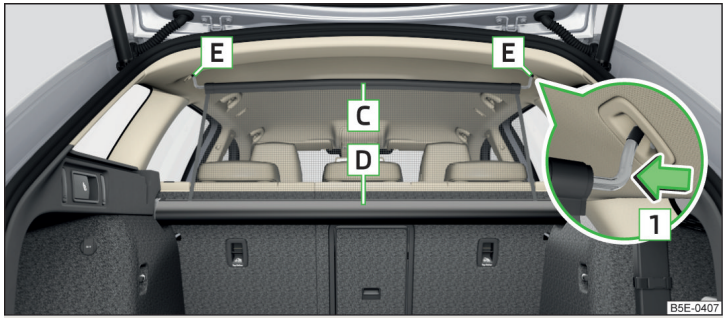


Fig. 131 **Net partition behind the front seats in the pulled-out state**

Removing the net partition behind the rear seats

› Fold out part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover A in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 130.
› Pull out the net partition at the upper crossbar C from the housing D » Fig. 131.
› Hook the crossbar into one of the receptacles E.
› On the other side, press on the crossbar and hook it into the appropriate receptacle E.

If the crossbar is hooked into the receptacle E to the left for example, then press on the crossbar in the direction of the arrow 1 and insert into the receptacle E to the right.

› Make sure that the crossbar is firmly seated in the fittings E .
› Fold back part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover A in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 130.

Using the net partition behind the rear seats

› Fold out part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover A in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 130.
› Press on the crossbar and remove it from the receptacles E, first on one side, then on the other side » Fig. 131.
› **Hold** the crossbar C in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up into the housing D without being damaged.
› Fold back part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover A in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 130.

CAUTION

If the net partition blocks when pulling it out of the housing, push the release lever B in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 130.

Removing and refitting the net partition housing

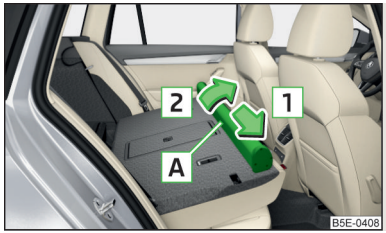


Fig. 132
Removing the net partition housing

Removing

› Fold the rear seat backrests forward » page 87.
› Open the rear right door » page 57.
› Push the net partition housing A in the direction of the arrow 1 and remove it from the mounts on the right seat backrests in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 132.

Fitting

› Insert the recesses on the net partition housing into the mounts on the rear seat backrests.
› Push the net partition housing in the opposite direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 132 as far as the stop.
› Fold the rear seats backs into their original position » page 87.

Roof rack

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

fixing points for base support 111
Stowing the roof rack 111
Roof load 112

WARNING

When transporting cargo the following the instructions must be adhered to.
- The transported items on the roof rack must always be securely attached – risk of accident!
- Always secure the load with appropriate and undamaged lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the roof rack system.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, the handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and gross permissible weight of the vehicle must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- On models fitted with a sliding/tilting roof, ensure that the sliding/tilting roof does not strike any items of luggage transported on the roof when tilting.
- Ensure that the luggage compartment lid does not hit the roof load when opened.

▪ The height of the vehicle changes after mounting a roof luggage rack system including the load that is being transported. Compare the vehicle height with available clearances, such as underpasses and garage doors.
▪ Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the load being transported.

Note

We recommend that you use a roof rack from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

fixing points for base support

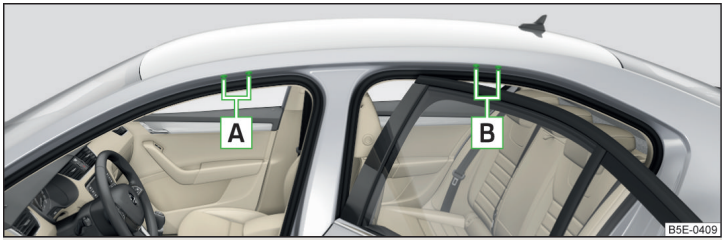


Fig. 133 **Attachment points**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 110 first.

The mounting points are located on both sides of the vehicle.

Arrangement of the mounting points » Fig. 133

A Front attachment points
B Rear attachment points

The mounting and dismounting of the basic carrier is carried out according to the instructions provided.

Stowing the roof rack



Fig. 134 **Remove the side panels of the luggage compartment/stow the roof rack**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 110 first.

With vehicles have the variable loading floor, then the roof racks can be stowed in the recesses of the luggage compartment side trim.

› Fold the variable loading floor into the upper position » page 108.
› Remove the side covers of the luggage compartment in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 134.
› Remove the key from the roof rack » !.

The removed key can be stowed in recess C.

› Insert the front roof rack A into the front recesses of the side trim.
› Insert the rear roof rack B into the rear recesses of the side trim.
› Replace the side trims of the luggage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow 1.
› Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position » page 108.

! CAUTION

▪ Before stowing the roof rack, pull out the key from the carrier, otherwise it could be damaged.
▪ If you want to stow the roof rack and the roll-up luggage compartment cover **at the same time**, then it is necessary that the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment is **covering** the rear roof rack.

Roof load

Read and observe ! and ! on page 110 first.

Do not exceed the permissible roof load of **75 kg**, this includes the carrier system.

The full permissible roof load cannot be used if a roof rack system with a lower load carrying capacity is used. The maximum capacity of the carrier system should never be exceeded.

Heating and ventilation

Heating, manual air conditioning system, Climatronic

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Heating and manual air conditioning 113
Climatronic (automatic air conditioning) 114
Climatronic - automatic operation 115
Air distribution control 115
Air outlet vents 116

The heating and air conditioning ventilate and heat the vehicle interior. The air conditioning system also cools and dehumidifies the vehicle interior.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

The cooling system operates only if the following conditions are met.

✓ The cooling system is switched on.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The outside temperature is above approx. +2 °C.
✓ The blower is switched on.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The cooling system prevents the windows from misting up during the cold season of the year.

It is possible to briefly activate recirculated air mode to enhance the cooling effect » page 115.

Health protection

To reduce health risks (e.g. common colds), the following instructions for the use of the cooling system are to be observed.

- The difference between the indoor temperature and the outdoor air temperature should not be greater than about 5 ° C.
- The cooling system is to be turned off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey.
- Once a year, disinfection of the manual air conditioner or the Climatronic is to be carried out by a specialist company.

WARNING

- For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting. The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting up.
- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.

CAUTION

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of e.g. ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!
- If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system is switched off to ensure that the engine cools down.

Heating and manual air conditioning

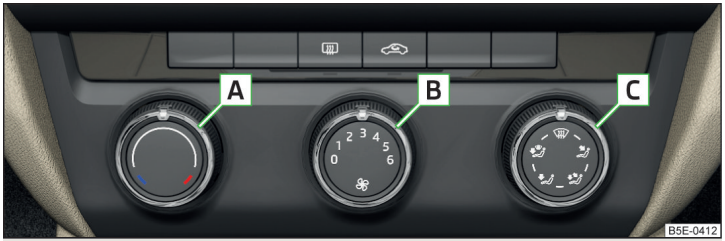


Fig. 135 **Heating Controls**

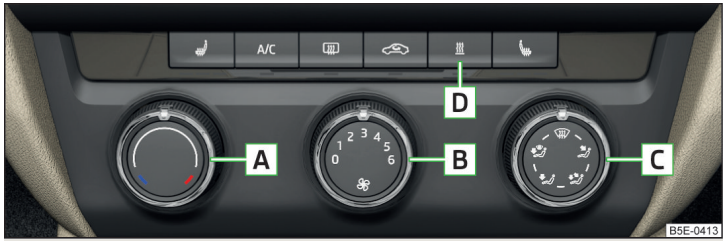


Fig. 136 **Controls of the manual air conditioning**

Read and observe and on page 113 first.

Individual functions can be set or switched on by turning the dial or pressing the corresponding key. When the function is switched on, the warning light illuminates below the button.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 135 and » Fig. 136

A Setting temperature
- Lower the temperature
- Increase the temperature

B Set the blower speed (Level 0: Fan off, Level 6: highest speed)

C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 116
- Air flow to the windows
- Air flow to the upper body
- Air flow into the footwell and to the body (warmer air directed to the footwell than to the body)
- Air flow in the footwell
- Air flow to the windows and the footwell

D Depending on equipment fitted:
- Auxiliary heating and ventilation on / switch off » page 118
- Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 76

Control the seat heater on the front left seat » page 85

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

Switch the rear window heater on/off » page 76

Switch recirculation on/off » page 115

Control the seat heater on the front right seat » page 85

Information on the cooling system
The cooling system operates only if the following conditions are met » page 112.

The warning light below the button **A/C** » Fig. 136 illuminates after activation, even if not all of the conditions for the function of the cooling system have been met. The lighting up of the indicator light in the button signals the operational readiness of the cooling system.

When the air distribution control is turned to position the cooling system is activated.

Note
During operation of the manual air conditioning, an increase in engine idle speed may occur under certain circumstances in order to ensure sufficient heating comfort.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)



Fig. 137 **Controls the Climatronic**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 113 first.

The Climatronic in **automatic mode** ensures the best-possible setting of the temperature of the out-flowing air, the blower stage and air distribution.

Individual functions can be set or switched on by turning the dial or pressing the corresponding key. When the function is switched on, a warning light lights up within or below the button.

Some functions can also be operated in the infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *Adjustment of the heating and cooling system*.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 137

A Adjust the temperature for the left side (or for both sides)[1)]
- Lower the temperature
- Increase the temperature

B Interior temperature sensor

C Adjust fan speed (the setting is indicated by the number of illuminated control lamps shown in the knob)
- Turn to the left: Reduce speed up to turning off the Climatronic
- Turn to the right: Increase speed

D Adjust the temperature for the right side (or for both sides)[2)]
- Lower the temperature
- Increase the temperature

E Display the temperature setting for the left side

F Display the temperature setting for the right side

G Depending on equipment fitted:
- Auxiliary heating and ventilation on / switch off » page 118
- **OFF** Switching Climatronic system off » !

Control the seat heater on the front left seat » page 85

Air flow to the windows

Air flow to the upper body

Air flow in the footwell

Switch recirculation on/off » page 115

Control the seat heater on the front right seat » page 85

MAX Intensive de-icing or ventilation of the windscreen, switching on/off

Switch the rear window heater on/off » page 76

Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 76

MENU Climatronic set in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*

SYNC Synchronize the temperature inside the entire vehicle according to the temperature setting on the driver's side

AUTO Switching automatic mode on » page 115

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

[1)] Applies to left-hand drive vehicles.
[2)] Applies to right-hand drive vehicles.

Setting temperature
The temperature can be adjusted on the Climatronic control unit or in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *Setting the heating and the cooling system*.

The temperature can be set between +16 °C and +29.5 °C. The temperature is regulated automatically within this range.

Illuminates in the temperature display **LO** then the Climatronic works with **maximum cooling** (temperature setting below +16 °C).

Illuminates in the temperature display **HI** then the Climatronic works with **maximum heating** (temperature setting above +29.5 °C).

There is no automatic temperature control in the two end positions.

WARNING
- Do not switch off the Climatronic system for longer than necessary.
- Switch on the Climatronic system as soon as the windows mist up.

CAUTION
Do not cover the interior temperature sensor B » Fig. 137 as this could impair the functioning of the Climatronic.

Note
- During operation of the Climatronic, an increase in engine idle speed can occur under certain circumstances in order to ensure adequate heating comfort.
- When MAX is switched on, the air flow to the windows is switched on. The air flow to the windows will remain switched on after turning MAX off.
- Holding the button **AUTO** will turn on **SYNC** automatically.

Climatronic - automatic operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 113 first.

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

Automatic mode can be **switched off** by pressing one of the buttons for the air distribution or by increasing/decreasing the blower speed. The temperature regulation is continued.

Operating modes
Automatic mode works in three modes - moderate, medium, and intensive.

Setting the individual operating modes » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *Setting the heating and the cooling system*.

After the automatic mode is switched on, Climatronic works in the last selected mode.

The currently selected mode is displayed in the Infotainment display.

Note
Climatronic is set to the medium setting at the factory.

Air distribution control

Read and observe ! and ! on page 113 first.

The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the Interior of the vehicle.

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

Switching on/off
› Press the button.

When the recirculation mode is activated, the warning light below the button lights up.

Heating and manual air conditioning system
If the air distribution control is set to position when the recirculation modes is switched on, the recirculated-air mode is switched off. Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this setting by repeatedly pressing the symbol button .

When the **A/C** is switched on and the temperature regulator is turned to the left, the recirculated-air mode is switched on.

Climatronic
Climatronic may have an air quality sensor for the detection of the pollutant concentration in the sucked-in air.

If a considerable increase in concentration of pollutants is recognised by the air quality sensor, the recirculated air mode will be switched on automatically.

When the pollutant concentration decreases to the normal level, the recirculated air mode is automatically switched off.

This automatic on/off switching of the recirculated-air mode can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *Setting the heating and the cooling system*.

If the button **AUTO** is pressed when the recirculation modes is switched on, the recirculated-air mode is switched off.

Depending on the moisture conditions in the vehicle interior the air recirculation may also shut-down automatically.

WARNING

The recirculation system cannot be switched on for a longer period of time, because there is no supply of fresh air from the outside. "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

CAUTION

We recommend not smoking in the vehicle when the recirculating air operation is switched on. The smoke sucked from inside the vehicle is deposited on the evaporator of the air conditioner. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Note

The automatic activation/deactivation of the air recirculation with Climatronic only works if the outside temperature is higher than approx. 2 °C.

Air outlet vents



Fig. 138 **Air vents at the front**

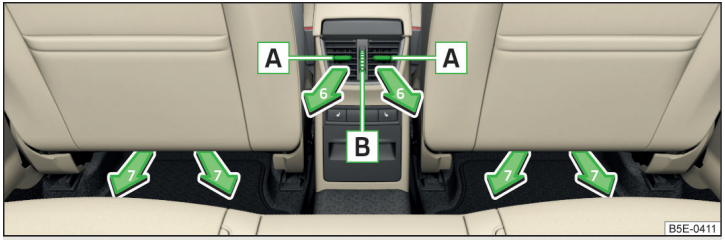


Fig. 139 **Air vents at the rear**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 113 first.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3**, **4** » Fig. 138 and **6** » Fig. 139 - the outlets can be opened and closed individually.

Changing the direction of air flow

› To change the height of the air flow, swivel the horizontal fins with the movable adjuster **A** » Fig. 138 or » Fig. 139 upward or downward.

› To change the lateral direction of the air flow, turn the vertical fins with the movable adjuster **A** » Fig. 138 or » Fig. 139 to the left or right.

Opening
› Turn regulator B » Fig. 138 or » Fig. 139upwards.

Closing
› Turn regulator B » Fig. 138 or » Fig. 139downwards.

Depending on the setting of the air distribution on the front panel of the heater, the manual air conditioning or the Climatronic, the following air vents are active.

Set the direction of the air outlet	Active air outlet nozzles » Fig. 138 and » Fig. 139
	1. 2. 4
	1. 2. 4. 5. 7
	3. 4. 6
	4. 5. 7
	3. 4. 5. 6. 7

CAUTION
To ensure that the heating, the manual air conditioning and the Climatronic systems work properly, do not block up the air outlet vents with any objects.

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Switching on/off 118
Radio remote control 119

Functional requirements of the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)
✓ The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.
✓ The fuel supply is adequate (the warning light is not illuminated in the instrument cluster).

Aux. heating
The auxiliary heating can be used when both when stationary, when the engine is switched off, to preheat the vehicle and also while driving (e.g. during the heating phase of the engine).

The auxiliary heating warms up the coolant by combusting fuel from the vehicle tank. This heats the air flowing into the passenger compartment (if the blower is turned on).

The auxiliary heating also warms up the engine.

Auxiliary ventilation
The auxiliary ventilation enables fresh air to flow into the vehicle interior by switching off the engine, whereby the interior temperature is effectively decreased (e.g. with the vehicle parked in the sun).

WARNING
- The auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) (hereinafter referred to as aux. heating) must never be operated in closed rooms (e.g. garages) – risk of poisoning!
- The auxiliary heating must not be allowed to run during refuelling – risk of fire.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating is located on the underside of the vehicle. If you want to use the heater, do not park the car in places where the exhaust fumes can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel etc. - risk of fire.

CAUTION
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating, which is located on the underside of the vehicle, must not be clogged and the exhaust flow must not be blocked.
- If the auxiliary heating is running, the vehicle battery discharges.
- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free (e.g. of ice, snow or leaves) to ensure that the auxiliary heating operates properly.

Note

▪ The auxiliary heating only switches the blower on, if it has achieved a coolant temperature of approx. 50 °C.
▪ At low outside temperatures, this can result in a formation of water vapour in the area of the engine compartment. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
▪ So that warm air can flow into the vehicle interior after switching on the aux. heating, you must maintain the comfort temperature normally selected by you, leave the fan switched on and leave the air outlet vents in open. It is recommended to put the air flow in the position or .

Switching on/off



Fig. 140 **Button for direct power on / off of the auxiliary heating (heating and ventilation) on the front panel of the Climatronic / manual air conditioning**

Read and observe and on page 117 first.

The auxiliary heating (heating and ventilation) (hereinafter referred to as a heater) can be switched on and off as follows.

Switching on

- Manually with the symbol key on the front panel of the Climatronic or the manual air conditioning » Fig. 140.
- Manually with the symbol key on the radio remote control.
- Via an automatically programmed and activated pre-set time in the Infotainment.
- Automatically according to the ambient conditions » .

Switching off

- Manually with the symbol key on the front panel of the Climatronic or the manual air conditioning » Fig. 140.
- Manually with the symbol key **OFF** on the radio remote control.
- Via an automatically programmed and activated pre-set time in the Infotainment.
- Automatically when the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates.
- Automatically according to the ambient conditions » .

After switching the system off, the auxiliary heating will continue running a little while longer in order to burn the remaining fuel in the auxiliary heater.

After switching off, coolant pump still runs for a short period.

Programming the auxiliary heating in the Infotainment

For vehicles with Climatronic: on the front panel of the Climatronic, press button **MENU** → .

For vehicles with manual air conditioning: on the Infotainment, press button CAR → .

When automatic switching on is activated, the indicator light in the symbol key lights up » Fig. 140 for about 10 seconds after the ignition is turned off.

CAUTION

The automatic switching on and off the heating for rapid heating of the vehicle interior can be disabled in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *Setting the heating and the cooling system*.

Radio remote control



Fig. 141
Radio remote control

Read and observe ! and ! on page 117 first.

Using the radio remote control, the aux. heating and ventilation (hereinafter referred to as heater) can be switched on or off.

Function and description of the radio remote control » Fig. 141

A Warning light
B Aerial
Switch on the auxiliary heating
OFF Switch off the auxiliary heating

To switch the auxiliary heating on or off, hold the remote control vertically, with the aerial B » Fig. 141 pointing upwards. The antenna must not be covered with the fingers or the palm of the hand during this process.

The auxiliary heating can only be switched on/off safely using the radio remote control, if the distance between the radio remote control and the vehicle is at least 2 m.

After pressing the button, the warning light in the remote control gives the user different kinds of feedback.

Display warning light A » Fig. 141	Meaning
Lights up green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched on.
Lights up red for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched off.
Slowly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The ignition signal was not received.
Quickly flashes green for around 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating is blocked, e. g because the tank is nearly empty or there is a fault in the auxiliary heating.
Flashes red for around 2 seconds.	The switch off signal was not received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was received.
Lights up orange for around 2 seconds, then flashes green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was not received.
Flashes orange for around 5 seconds.	The battery is discharged, however the switching on or off signal was not received.

Replace the battery » page 223.

! CAUTION

- The radio remote control comprises electronic components and must therefore be protected against water, severe impacts and direct sunlight.
- When the battery is fully charged, the range of the remote control is a few hundred metres. Obstacles between the radio remote control and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and a weaker battery can clearly reduce the range.

Driving

Starting-off and Driving

Starting and stopping the engine using the key

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic immobilizer 120
Steering lock locking / unlocking 120
Turning ignition on/off and starting the engine 121
Stopping the engine 121

With the key in the ignition, the ignition can be switched on and off and the engine can be started / stopped.

WARNING

- While driving with the engine stopped, the ignition must always be switched on » page 121, *Turning ignition on/off and starting the engine*.
  - With the ignition off, the steering may lock » page 120 - danger of an accident!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop » page 128, *Parking*. Otherwise, the steering may lock - danger of an accident!
- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons such as children could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine -risk of injury, accidents and damage!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is risk of accident, damage or theft!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!

WARNING

- Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - there is the danger of poisoning and death!
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cloths or tools) in the engine compartment. This presents a fire hazard and the risk of engine damage.
- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a blanket) – risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a danger of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 219.

Note

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this, the engine reaches its operating temperature faster.

Electronic immobilizer

Read and observe ! and ! on page 120 first.

The electronic immobiliser (hereinafter referred to as immobiliser) makes the attempted theft or unauthorised use of your vehicle more difficult.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock.

As soon as the ignition key is removed from the ignition lock, the immobiliser is automatically activated.

Operational problems

If a component in the immobiliser key fails, it is not possible to start the engine. A corresponding message appears in the display of the instrument cluster to explain the immobiliser is active.

To start, use the other vehicle key or seek help from a specialist garage.

Steering lock locking / unlocking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 120 first.

The steering lock (steering lock) deters any attempted theft of your vehicle.

Locking

› Withdraw the ignition key.
› Turn the steering wheel to the left or right until the steering lock clicks into place.

Unlocking

› Insert the key into the ignition lock.

› Switch on the ignition » page 121.

The steering column lock is unlocked.

If the ignition switch can not be turned on, then turn the steering wheel back and forth slightly and thereby unlock the steering lock.

Turning ignition on/off and starting the engine

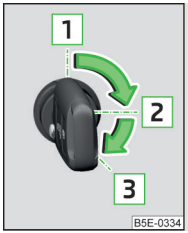


Fig. 142
Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 120 first.

Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock » Fig. 142

1 Ignition switched off, engine switched off
2 Ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

Switching ignition on/off

› Turn key to position 2.

The ignition is switched on.

› Turn key to position 1.

The ignition is switched off.

Procedure for starting the engine

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear stick to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.
› Turn the key into position 3 as far as it will go - the engine's starting procedure will commence (do not touch the accelerator).
› Release the key, the engine will start automatically.

After letting go, the vehicle key will return to position 2.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position 1. Repeat the start-up process after approx. half a minute.

For vehicles with **diesel engines**, the glow plug warning light goes on during starting. The engine starts after the warning light goes out.

Note

- The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Stopping the engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 120 first.

› Stop the vehicle » page 128, *Parking*.
› Turn key to position 1 » Fig. 142 *on page 121*.

The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P** .

CAUTION

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Note

After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Starting and stopping the engine at the push of the button

Introduction



Fig. 143
Starter button (START ENGINE STOP)

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Steering column lock locking / unlocking 122
Switching ignition on / off 123
Starting the engine 123
Switching off the engine 123
Problems starting the engine 124

The ignition can be switched on and off and the engine can be started/stopped with the starter button » Fig. 143.

The key must be in the vehicle in order to unlock the steering wheel, switch on the ignition, start the engine and drive.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons such as children could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine -risk of injury, accidents and damage!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is a risk of theft etc!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!

WARNING

Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - there is the danger of poisoning and death!

CAUTION

- The system can recognize the valid key, even if it has been accidentally left on the vehicle roof - there is danger of loss or damage to the key!
- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a danger of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 219.

Note

- Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this, the engine reaches its operating temperature faster.
- The system is protected against inadvertently switching off the engine while driving, this means that the engine can only be switched off in an emergency » page 123.

Steering column lock locking / unlocking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 122 first.

The steering lock (steering lock) deters any attempted theft of your vehicle.

Locking

› Switch off the engine.
› Open the driver door.

The steering lock is locked automatically.

If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked after the vehicle has been locked.

Unlocking

› Open the driver's door and get into the vehicle.
› Close the driver's door.

The steering is locked automatically.

Under certain circumstances (e.g. after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door), the steering is enabled only when the ignition is switched on or the engine is started.

WARNING

Never let the vehicle roll with locked steering lock - there is a risk of accident!

Switching ignition on / off

Read and observe ! and ! on page 122 first.

› Press the button » Fig. 143 *on page 122* briefly.

The ignition is switched on or off.

On vehicles fitted with a **manual gearbox**, the clutch pedal must not be depressed while switching the ignition on or off, otherwise the system would try to start.

On vehicles fitted with a **automatic gearbox**, the brake pedal must not be depressed while switching the ignition on or off, otherwise the system would try to start.

If the driver's door is opened while the ignition is on, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the instrument cluster display.

M Ignition switched on.

S IGNITION STILL ON

When leaving the vehicle always switch off the ignition.

Starting the engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 122 first.

Procedure for starting the engine

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear stick to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.
› Press the starter button » Fig. 143 *on page 122* briefly – the engine starts automatically.

In vehicles with **diesel engines** after pressing the button, the glow plug warning light lights up. The engine starts after the warning light goes out.

Note

▪ The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
▪ You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Switching off the engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 122 first.

Switching off

› Stop the vehicle » page 128, *Parking*.
› Press the button » Fig. 143 *on page 122* briefly.

The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.

Emergency shut-down

If necessary and in exceptional cases, the engine may even be turned off while driving.

› Press the starter button » Fig. 143 *on page 122* for longer than 1 second or twice within 1 second.

After the emergency stop of the engine, the steering lock will remain unlocked.

CAUTION

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Note

After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Problems starting the engine



Fig. 144
Starting the engine - press the button with the key

Read and observe ! and ! on page 122 first.

The key in the vehicle cannot be verified
If the key in the vehicle cannot be verified, then engine cannot be started by pressing a button.

One of the following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Key not detected. Owner's Manual!**
M **Key not found.**
S **NO KEY**

The reasons for this may be:
- The battery in the key is almost out of charge.
- The key is malfunctioning
- There is interference in the signal between the system and the key (strong electromagnetic field).

Try to start the engine by pressing the button with the key » Fig. 144.

System fault
If the following message appears on the display of the instrument cluster, there is a system malfunction.

M **Keyless access system faulty.**
S **KEYLESS ACCESS SYSTEM FAULTY**

Try to start the engine by pressing the button with the key » Fig. 144.

! CAUTION
The key can only be verified if it is in the vehicle. It is therefore not always necessary to know where the key is.

Note
- When attempting to start, the key bit must be pointed towards the button » Fig. 144.
- If the engine fails to start after pressing the button with the key, seek specialist help.

START-STOPsystem

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 125
Manually deactivating/activating the system 126
Information messages 126

The START STOP system (hereinafter referred to as the system) reduces CO_2 emissions and harmful emissions, and saves fuel.

If the system determine that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops or is at a standstill (e.g. at the traffic lights), it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

The system function depends on many factors. Some of them are down to the driver, the others are systemic and can neither be influenced nor identified.

Therefore the system may react differently in situations which seem identical from the driver's perspective.

The system is automatically activated **every** time the ignition is switched on (even where this has previously been manually deactivated with the button A OFF).

Note
If the engine has stopped due to the system, the ignition remains on.

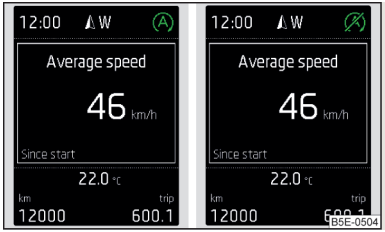


Fig. 145
Display

Vehicles with manual transmission
The engine is automatically switched **off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a halt, the shift lever is moved into neutral and the clutch pedal is released.

The engine is automatically **started** as soon as the clutch pedal is depressed.

Vehicles with automatic transmission
The engine is automatically switched **off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a halt and the brake pedal is operated.

The engine is automatically **started** as soon as the brake pedal is released.

Conditions for the system function
The following conditions must be met for the system to function correctly.

✓ The driver's door is closed.
✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
✓ The bonnet is closed.
✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km.h after the last stop.

System status
The system status is shown in the display when the vehicle comes to a halt » Fig. 145.

Ⓐ The engine is automatically switched off; when the vehicle moves off, the ignition process will be automatically initiated.
The engine is not automatically switched off.

Reasons for the engine running
It may be essential for the engine to keep running when the vehicle comes to a halt, for the following reasons.

- The engine temperature for the proper function of the system has not yet been reached.
- The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- The current consumption is too high.
- High air-conditioning or heating capacity (high fan speed, big difference between the desired and actual interior temperature).

When the engine is shut-down automatically and the system detects that the engine is required such as when the brake pedal is pressed repeatedly then the system automatically starts the engine.

Infotainment display
Information about the current status of the system can be displayed in the Infotainment display » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Note

- If the vehicle remains outdoors for a long time in minus temperatures or in direct sunlight, it can take several hours until the internal temperature of the vehicle battery reaches a suitable temperature for proper operation of the START STOP system.
- If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than approx. 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during stop mode, the engine will have to be started manually.
- No automatic engine shut-down takes place when a vehicle with **automatic transmission** is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shut-down takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.
- For vehicles with **automatic transmission** there is no automatic engine shut-down when the system detects a manoeuvring action due to a large steering angle.

Manually deactivating/activating the system



Fig. 146
Button for the START-STOP system

Deactivating/activating
› Press the symbol button (A OFF) » Fig. 146.

When system is deactivated, the warning light in the button illuminates.

If the system is turned off, it will be automatically reactivated after turning the ignition off and on.

Note
- If the system is deactivated when the engine is turned off automatically, then the automatic start process takes place.
- Selecting the driving mode Eco when the system is deactivated will automatically activate the system » page 157, *Selection of the driving mode (Driving Mode Selection)*.

Information messages

The information messages are shown in the instrument cluster display.

M **Start the engine manually!**
S **START MANUALLY**

If for example the driver's seat belt is stored, the engine must be started manually.

On vehicles with the starter button, the ignition is turned off by the first press of the starter button; the start process is only initiated when the button is pressed for the second time.

M **Error: start-stop system**
S **START STOP ERROR**

A system error is present. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Brakes and parking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information on braking 126
Handbrake 127
Parking 128

WARNING
- Greater physical effort for braking is required when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
- During the braking procedure on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, press the clutch pedal. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!
- When leaving the vehicle never leave persons leave unattended in the vehicle who could release the brake. The vehicle might then move off – risk of accident!
- Observe the recommendations on the new brake pads » page 132.

CAUTION
Never let the brakes slip with light pressure on the pedal if braking is not necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.

Information on braking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 126 first.

Wear-and-tear
The wear of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style.

The brake pads wear more quickly if a lot of journeys are completed in towns and over short distances or if a very sporty style of driving is adopted.

If operated under **severe conditions**, the thickness of the brake pads must be checked by a specialist garage between service appointments as well.

Wet roads or road salt
The performance of the brakes can be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or have a coating of ice or layer of salt on them in winter. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times » !.

Corrosion
Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the bake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned by applying the brakes several times » !.

Long or steep slopes
Before travelling a long distance with a steep gradient, reduce speed and shift into the next lowest gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. Any additional braking should be completed intermittently, not continuously.

Emergency brake display
If the brakes are applied in full and the vehicle systems evaluate the situation as dangerous for the traffic following behind, the brake light flashes automatically.

After the speed was reduced below around 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again.

Faults in the brake surface
If it is found that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, the brake system may be faulty.

Visit a specialist garage immediately and adjust your style of driving appropriately, as you will not know the exact extent of the damage.

Low brake fluid level
An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically » page 32, *Brake system*.

Brake booster
The brake booster increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

! WARNING
Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.

Handbrake



Fig. 147
Handbrake

Read and observe ! and ! on page 126 first.

The hand brake is used when stopping and parking for securing the vehicle against unwanted movement.

Apply
› Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Release
› Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **and at the same time** push in the lock button » Fig. 147 .
› Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light (P) lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Release the handbrake!**
S **RELEASE HANDBRAKE**

The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of more than around 5 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

WARNING

Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

Parking

Read and observe and on page 126 first.

When stopping and parking, look for a place with a suitable surface » .

Only carry out the activities while parking in the specified order.

› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission** place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **Manual transmission**, select **1st gear** or **Reverse gear R**.
› Release the brake pedal.

WARNING

The parts of the exhaust system can become very hot. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like. - Risk of fire and serious injury can occur!

Manual shifting of gears and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing 128
Pedals 128

Manual gear changing

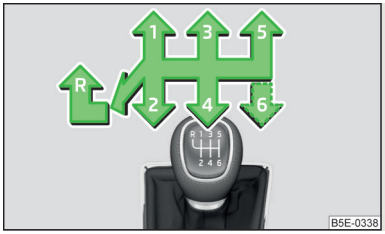


Fig. 148
Gearshift pattern of 5-gear or 6-gear manual gearbox

The shift pattern for the individual gear positions is shown on the gear lever » Fig. 148.

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 41.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

Reverse gear is engaged

› Stop the vehicle.
› The clutch pedal is fully depressed.
› Move the shift lever to the idle position switch and press down.
› Move the shift lever fully to the left and then forward into **R** position » Fig. 148.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

▪ If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.
▪ When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the clutch and the accelerator pedal – this may lead to damage to the clutch.

Pedals

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances! ▸

In the driver's footwell, only a footmat, which is attached to the two corresponding attachment points may be used.

Only use factory-supplied footmats or footmats from the range of ŠKODAOriginal Accessories, which are fitted to two attachment points.

WARNING

No objects may be placed in the driver's footwell – risk due to obstruction or limitation of pedal operation.

Automatic gearbox

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Modes and use of selector lever ____ 129
Selector lever lock ____ 130
Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic) ____ 130
Starting-off and driving ____ 131

The automatic transmission performs automatic gear changes.

The modes of the automatic transmission can be adjusted by the driver by means of the selector lever.

WARNING

- No throttle when it is set before starting the mode for moving forward with the selector lever - there is a risk of accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving – risk of an accident!
- If the vehicle is in the mode selected **D**, **S**, **R** or Tiptronic and the engine stops when at idle speed, then the brake pedal must be pressed. Even when the engine is idling, the power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle creeps.
- When leaving the vehicle, the selector lever is always to put in the **P** mode. Otherwise, the vehicle could be set in motion - risk of accident!

CAUTION

- If the selector lever is moved to mode **N** while driving, the accelerator pedal must be released and you will need to wait until the engine has reached its idling speed before moving the selector lever to a forward driving mode again.
- When the outdoor temperature is below -10 ° C, the selector lever when starting must always be in **P** mode.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Note

After the ignition is switched off, the ignition key can only be withdrawn if the selector lever is in the position **P**.

Modes and use of selector lever

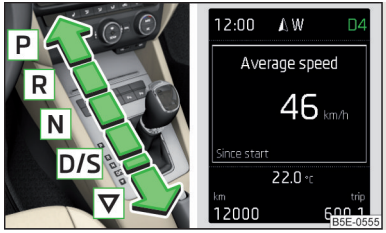


Fig. 149
Selector lever/display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 129 first.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 149.

The following modes can be selected with the selector lever » Fig. 149.

P – Parking mode
The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this mode.

The parking mode must only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

R – Reverse gear
Reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idling speed.

N – Neutral
The power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted in this mode.

D/S - mode for driving forward (Normal program) / mode for driving forward (Sport program)
The system switches from one mode to the other by moving the selector lever into the spring-loaded position ▽ » Fig. 149.

In mode **D** or **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically depending on the engine load, the operation of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle speed, and the selected driving mode .

In mode **S , the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down at higher engine speeds** than in mode **D**.

If the Sport driving mode is selected with the engine running » page 157, *Selection of the driving mode (Driving Mode Selection)* , the transmission is automatically set in the **S** mode.

E – Economical driving mode
If the driving mode Eco or Individual (engine - Eco) » page 157 is selected and the selection lever is in the setting **D/S**, the transmission is automatically set to mode **E**. This mode cannot be selected with the selector lever.

In mode **E , the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down at lower engine speeds** than in mode **D**.

Selector lever lock



Fig. 150
Shift lock button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 129 first.

The selector lever is locked in mode **P** and **N** to prevent that the forward driving is selected accidentally, thereby setting the vehicle in motion.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

The selector lever lock is indicated by the illumination of the warning light .

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D/S**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

Releasing selector lever from mode P or N (selector lever lock)
› Press the brake pedal and the lock button at the same time in the direction of 1 » Fig. 150 .

Just depress the brake pedal, if you would like to change from the mode **N** to **D/S**.

Defective selector lever lock
If the selector lever lock is defective or its power supply is interrupted (e.g. discharged vehicle battery, faulty fuse), the selector lever can no longer be moved out of position **P** in the normal manner and the vehicle can no longer be driven. The selector lever must be unlocked specially » page 225.

Note
If you want to move the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D/S** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents that you accidentally select mode **R** or **N**.

Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)

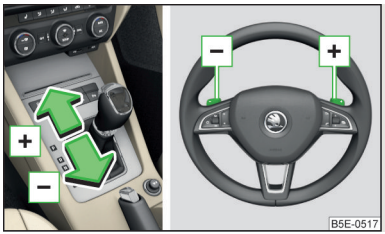


Fig. 151
Selector lever/multi-function steering wheel

Read and observe ! and ! on page 129 first.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears with the selector lever or multifunction steering wheel. This mode can be selected both while stopping and while driving.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the display » Fig. 149 *on page 129* .

The gearshift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 41.

Switching to manual shifting

› Push the gear selector from position **D/S** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle.

When switching to the manual shifting while driving, the current gear is maintained.

Shifting up gears

› Push the selector lever forwards [+] » Fig. 151.
› Pull the paddle (+) » Fig. 151 briefly towards the steering wheel.

Shifting down gears

› Push the selector lever backwards [-] » Fig. 151 .
› Pull the paddle (-) » Fig. 151 briefly towards the steering wheel.

Temporarily switching to manual shifting in position D/S

› Pull one of the (-)/(+) paddles » Fig. 151 briefly towards the steering wheel .

If you do not pull one of the rocker switches (-)/(+) for more than 1 Minute, manual shifting of gears is deactivated. The temporary switch to manual gear shifting can also be deactivated by pulling the (+) paddle towards the steering wheel for more than 1 second.

Note

- It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear of the brakes » page 126.
- When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.
- If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

Starting-off and driving

Read and observe ! and ! on page 129 first.

Starting off

› Start the engine.
› Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
› Press the lock button in the direction of [1] » Fig. 150 *on page 130* and hold.
› Move the selector lever into the desired position » page 129 and then release the lock button.
› Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

Stopping (while the car is moving)

› Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
› Keep holding the brake pedal until driving is resumed.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time, such as at a cross roads.

Kickdown

The kickdown function allows you to achieve the maximum acceleration of your vehicle while driving.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the kickdown function is activated in any forward driving mode.

The gearbox shifts down one or more gears depending on the vehicle speed and engine speed, and the vehicle accelerates.

The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.

Driving in neutral position in mode E (free-wheel)

› Move the selector lever into the position **D/S**.
› Select the driving mode Eco or Individual (Drive - Eco) » page 157, *Selection of the driving mode (Driving Mode Selection)*.
› Remove your foot from the accelerator pedal (the speed is higher than 20 km/h).

The vehicle moves without the braking effect of the engine.

The gear is selected again automatically, when you briefly depress the accelerator brake pedal or pull the left rocker switch (-) towards the steering wheel » page 130, *Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)*.

This function is not available when towing a trailer or when another accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Launch control[1)]

The launch control function allows the vehicle in mode **S** or Tiptronic to reach its maximum acceleration when starting off.

› Disable the TCS » page 135, *Braking and stabilisation systems*.

[1)] This function is only valid for some engines.

› START STOP deactivate » page 126, *Manually deactivating/activating the system*.
› Fully depress and hold the brake pedal with your left foot.
› Fully depress the accelerator pedal with your right foot.
› Release the brake pedal.

The vehicle starts off with maximum acceleration.

› Reactivate the TCS and START-STOP when the desired speed has been reached.

WARNING

Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

Running-in and economical driving

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Running-in 132
Tips for economical driving 132
DriveGreen function 133

The fuel consumption, degree of pollution and vehicle wear depend on driving style, road condition, weather conditions and the like.

Running-in

Driving in the engine
The engine has to be run in during the first 1500 kilometres. During this period, the driving style decides on the quality of the driving-in process.

During the first 1 000 km we recommend not driving faster than 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed, not to drive at full throttle and to dispense with the trailer.

In the area of **1,000 to 1,500 kilometres** the engine load can be increased up to the maximum permitted engine speed.

New tyres
New tyres have to be "run in" since they do not offer optimal grip at first.

Drive especially carefully for the first 500 km or so.

New brake pads
New brake pads have to first "grind in" because these do not initially have the best possible braking effect.

Drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

Tips for economical driving

To achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption, the following instructions must be observed.

Looking ahead when driving
Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

Switch in an energy saving and timely manner
Observe the recommended gear » page 41.

Avoid full throttle and high speeds
Fuel consumption can be reduced by half if only three-quarters of the possible top speed of your vehicle is used.

Reducing idling
If the vehicle is fitted with the START STOP system there is an automatic reduction of the idling. If the engine is stopped on vehicles without START-STOP system, such as when waiting in a traffic jam, the fuel economy is already greater after 30 - 40 s than the fuel quantity which is required for engine restart.

Avoid short distances
When driving a short distance of less than about 4 km, the engine cannot reach its operating temperature. As long as the engine has not reached operating temperature, the fuel consumption is significantly higher than with the engine hot.

Pay attention to the correct tyre inflation pressure being maintained
Further information » page 205.

Avoid unnecessary ballast
Per 100 kg of weight, consumption increases by about 0.3 l/100 km. At a speed of 100 - 120 km/h, a vehicle fitted with a roof rack cross member without a load will use about 10 % more fuel than normal due to the increased aerodynamic drag.

Saving electricity
Only turn on electrical consumers (e.g. seat, window and mirror heating and the like) for as long as necessary.

In Infotainment, the display is shown of up to three consumers which are currently showing the highest degree of fuel consumption » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Use the cooling system economically
The air conditioning system compressor uses power from the engine when in cooling mode, which will affect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be on if the windows are open.

DriveGreen function

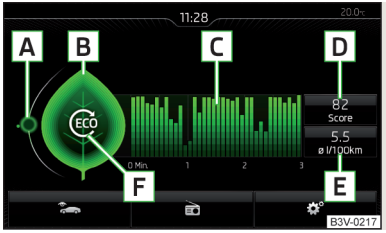


Fig. 152
Shown in the infotainment display

The DriveGreen function (hereinafter referred to as DriveGreen) evaluates the driving efficiency based on the information respecting the driving style. Useful tips for reducing fuel consumption are also offered.

DriveGreen can be displayed on the Infotainment as follows.

› Press the button CAR in the Infotainment and then in the display the function keys one after the other , **DriveGreen**.

A driving liquid display
With the driving is liquid the display is near the green dot. When accelerating or braking, the indicator moves down or up.

B "Green leaf"
The leaf margin shown in green shows with a few seconds, the current drive efficiency. When driving economically there are several green layers on the edge of the leaf. When driving less economically, no green colour appears and the leaf can disappear completely.

C Graphical review summary
The evaluation of the driving economy during the last 3 minutes or 1.5 minutes (depending on type of Infotainment) is shown like a beam in 5-second increments. The current status is shown on the left and moves gradually to the right. The higher the green bars, the more economic the driving style is.

D Scoring
In the function key, the evaluation of driving efficiency is shown from the start in the range from 0 to 100 points. The higher the indicated value, the more economic the driving style is.

When you press the function key, a detailed assessment showing the driving efficiency during the last 30 minutes is shown.

If the trip from the start, takes less than 30 minutes, then the assessment takes in information from the previous trip (the bars are shown in dark green).

E Average fuel consumption
In the function key, the average fuel consumption from the start is displayed.

When you press the function key a detailed overview of the average fuel consumption during the last 30 minutes is shown.

If the trip from the start, takes less than 30 minutes, then the average fuel consumption takes in information from the previous trip (the bars are shown in dark green).

F Symbols in the display
The display may show the following four symbols, which give information on the current driving style.

ECO Ecological trip
The current speed has a negative effect on fuel consumption.
The driving is not liquid, drive with anticipation.
3▸4 Recommended gear.

Tips for reducing fuel consumption
When tapping the "Page" the display shows useful tips on how to reduce fuel consumption. These tips can to be helpful to drive more economically.

Note
- Resetting the single-trip memory "from start" also resets the average consumption E and the driving assessment D.
- With some Infotainment types changing the units for the fuel consumption indicator causes the resetting of the average fuel consumption values E.

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Driving Tips 134
Driving through water 134

This section of the manual contains important information on preventing damage to the vehicle while driving.

Driving Tips

Only drive on such roads and in such terrain, which match the vehicle parameters » page 236, *Technical data* as well as your driving skills.

The driver is always responsible for deciding whether the vehicle can handle travelling in the given terrain.

When travelling off paved roads, we recommend activating the OFF ROAD mode » page 138.

WARNING

- Always adjust your driving to the current terrain and weather conditions. Excessive speed or incorrect driving manoeuvres can cause damage to the vehicle and lead to serious injuries.
- Combustible objects such as dry leaves or twigs caught under the base of the vehicle could ignite on hot vehicle parts - risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle! When driving over objects which are larger than the ground clearance, the vehicle can get damaged.
- Any objects that get trapped under the vehicle floor must be removed as soon as possible. These objects can damage the fuel lines, the brake system, seals and other parts of the vehicle.
- Drive slowly in unknown terrain and watch out for unexpected obstacles, such as potholes, rocks, stumps, etc.
- Check up on confusing sections of unpaved roads before travelling on them and consider whether such travelling is possible without risk.

Driving through water

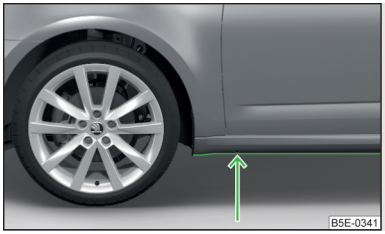


Fig. 153
Maximum permissible water level when driving through water

The following must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle when driving through bodies of water (e.g. flooded roads).

› Therefore determine the depth of the water before driving through bodies of water.

The water level must not reach above the web of the lower beam » Fig. 153.

› Do not drive any faster than at a walking speed.

At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle which can cause water to penetrate into the air induction system of the engine or into other parts of the vehicle.

› Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.

CAUTION

- If water penetrates into the intake system of the engine, there is a risk of serious damage to the engine parts!
- When driving through water, some vehicle parts such as the chassis, the electrics or the transmission can be severely damaged.
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water, making it difficult or impossible to drive through the body of water.
- Do not drive through salt water, as the salt can cause corrosion. An vehicle coming into contact with salt water is to be thoroughly rinsed with fresh water.

Assist systems

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Radar sensor ____ 135

WARNING

The following general information regarding the use of assistance systems must be observed.

- The assistance systems only serve to support and do not relieve the driver of the responsibility for driving the vehicle.
- The increased safety provision, as well as the increased occupant protection provided by the assistance systems must not tempt you to take risks - risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The assistance systems have physical and system-related limitations. For this reason, the driver may experience some undesired or delayed system responses in certain situations. You should therefore always be alert and ready to intervene!
- Only activate, deactivate or set the assistance systems so that you have the vehicle fully under control in every traffic situation - risk of accident!

Radar sensor



Fig. 154
Mounting location of the radar sensor

Read and observe ! on page 135 first.

The radar sensor » Fig. 154 (From here on referred to as sensor) is used to assess the traffic situation in front of the vehicle.

The sensor can distinguish objects by radiating and receiving electromagnetic waves.

The sensor is a component of the ACC » page 150 and Front Assist » page 155 systems.

The sensor function may be impaired in the events of one of the following.

- The sensor is soiled by mud, snow and the like.
- The area in front and around the sensor is obscured by labels, auxiliary lights and similar.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).

If the sensor is covered or dirty, the corresponding message appears in the instrument cluster display for the ACC system » page 155 or Front Assist system » page 157.

WARNING

- If you suspect that the sensor is damaged, deactivate the ACC system » page 150 and Front Assist system » page 155. Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- The sensor can become misaligned by collisions or by damage to the front of the vehicle, the wheel arch or the underside of the vehicle. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents! Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- The area in front and around the sensor should not be obscured by labels, auxiliary lights and similar. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accidents!

CAUTION

Remove the snow with a brush and the ice with a solvent-free de-icer.

Braking and stabilisation systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Stability Control (ESC) ____ 136
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ____ 136

Traction control (TCS) 136
Electronic differential lock (EDL and XDS) 137
Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR) 137
Brake Assist (HBA) 137
Hill Start Assist (HHC) 137
Multi collision brake (MCB) 138
Trailer stabilization system (TSA) 138

This chapter describes the functions of the brake and stabilization systems. The error display is in Chapter » page 31, *Warning lights*.

The brake and stabilization systems are automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on, unless otherwise indicated.

WARNING

The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 135, ! in section *Introduction*.

Stability Control (ESC)

Read and observe ! on page 136 first.

The ESC improves vehicle stability in dynamic driving situations, such as when the vehicle starts to skid.

The ESC monitors whether the desired direction of the current vehicle motion is occurring. In case of any deviation (e.g. oversteer), the ESC automatically brakes individual wheels to maintain the desired direction.

During an intervention of the system, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

Enable/disable ESC Sport

The activation of the ESC sports allows a sportier driving style. With a slight over or under steering of the vehicle take no ESC interventions take place and the TCS is restricted so that the spinning of the wheels of the driven axle can occur.

The activation or deactivation of the ESC sports can be done in one of two ways.

- By pressing the Symbol key for the activation and briefly pressing the button for the deactivation » Fig. 155 *on page 136*.
- Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Upon activation, in the instrument cluster the indicator light comes on and the display shows the following message.

M **ESC sport: directional stabil. restricted.**

S **ESC SPORT**

Upon deactivation, in the instrument cluster the control indicator turns off and the display shows the following message.

M **Stabilisation control (ESC) activated.**

S **ESC ON**

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 136 first.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

Traction control (TCS)

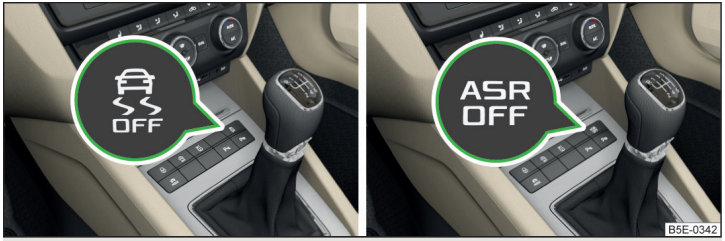


Fig. 155 **System button: Vehicle with ESC / vehicle without ESC**

Read and observe ! on page 136 first.

TCS prevents the spinning of the wheels of the driven axle. TCS reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels in the case of slipping wheels. Thus, for example, driving on road surfaces with low grip is made easier.

During a TCS intervention, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

Activating/deactivating TCS
The activation or deactivation of TCS can be done, depending on equipment, in one of the following ways.
- Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.
- By briefly pressing the symbol key » Fig. 155.
- By briefly pressing the symbol key » Fig. 155.

Upon deactivation, in the instrument cluster the indicator light lights up and the display shows the following message.

Traction control (ASR) deactivated.

ASR OFF

Upon activation, in the instrument cluster the indicator turns and the display shows the following message.

Traction control (ASR) activated.

ASR ON

The TCS should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.
- When driving with snow chains.
- When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
- When it is necessary to "rock" a car free when it has become stuck.

Note

On vehicles without the ESC system, the warning light **does not illuminate** upon deactivation of the TCS system, but a message is only displayed on the display of the instrument cluster.

Electronic differential lock (EDL and XDS)

Read and observe ! on page 136 first.

EDL
EDL prevents the turning of the respective wheel of the driven axle. EDL brakes the spinning wheel, if necessary, and transmits the driving force to the other driving wheel. Driving becomes easier on road surfaces with different traction under each wheel of the driven axle.

EDL switches off automatically to avoid excessive heat generation on the brake of the wheel being braked. Once the brakes have cooled down, there is an automatic re-activation of EDL.

XDS
XDS is an extension to the electronic differential lock. XDS does not respond to traction, but to the load relief of the inner front wheel of the driving axle during fast cornering.

The automatic brake intervention on the brake of the wheel with reduced load prevents the wheel from spinning. Thus, the traction is improved and the vehicle can continue to follow the desired track.

Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR)

Read and observe ! on page 136 first.

The DSR indicates to the driver in critical situations a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle. The DSR is activated, for example, on the right and left vehicle side when braking sharply on different road surfaces.

Brake Assist (HBA)

Read and observe ! on page 136 first.

HBA increases the braking effect and helps to shorten the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by the very quick operation of the brake pedal. To achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a complete standstill.

The HBA is automatically switched off when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Start Assist (HHC)

Read and observe ! on page 136 first.

HHC allows you, when driving on slopes, to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without having to use the handbrake.

The system holds the brake pressure produced by the activation of the brake pedal for approx. 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

The HHC is active from a 5% slope if the driver's door is closed. HHC is always active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off.

Multi collision brake (MCB)

Read and observe ! on page 136 first.

The MCB helps to decrease speed after a collision through automatic braking interventions and to stabilize the vehicle. This reduces the risk of a subsequent crash due to uncontrolled vehicle movement.

The automatic brake interventions can take place only if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ A **head-on** or **side** collision occurred.
- ✓ The impact speed was higher than approx. 10 km/h.
- ✓ The brakes, the ESC and other required electrical systems remain functional after impact.
- ✓ The accelerator pedal is not actuated.

Trailer stabilization system (TSA)

Read and observe ! on page 136 first.

The TSA helps the combination stable in situations where the trailer sways and then the whole trailer combination.

TSA brakes the individual wheels of the towing vehicle in order to damp the rocking motion of the entire vehicle combination.

The following conditions are required for the correct TSA function.

- ✓ The trailer was shipped from the factory or purchased from the ŠKODA genuine accessories.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The parking aid is activated.
- ✓ The speed is higher than approx. 60 km/h.

Further information » page 167, *Hitch and trailer*.

OFF ROAD-mode

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 139
Hill Descent Assistant 139
ESC OFF ROAD 140
TCSOFF ROAD 140
EDS OFF ROAD 140
ABS OFF ROAD 140

The OFF ROAD mode includes several features that help to overcome difficult navigable routes when travelling on non-paved roads.

But even with OFF ROAD mode activated, your vehicle is never a true SUV.

! WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 135, ! in section *Introduction*.
- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. This would lead the OFF ROAD mode to lose its effectiveness - risk of accident!

! CAUTION

- The OFF ROAD mode is not designed for the use on common roads.
- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres approved by the manufacturer to ensure theOFF ROAD mode operates correctly.

Operation



Fig. 156 **Button for selecting the driving mode / function key in Infotainment display**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 138 first.

We recommend that you activate the OFF ROAD mode for every trip on non-paved roads.

Activation

› Press the symbol button MODE » Fig. 156.

In the Infotainment display a running mode menu » Fig. 156 appears.

› Press the function key **Off-road** in the Infotainment display.

Deactivation

› Press the symbol button MODE » Fig. 156.
› In the Infotainment display select a driving mode other than **Off-road**.

So that an engagement of the OFF ROAD mode can take place, the following conditions must be met.

✓ The OFF ROAD mode is enabled.
✓ The vehicle is moving at a speed of less than 30 km/h.
✓ The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

The following functions are integrated in the OFF ROAD mode.

▸ Downhill Drive Support » page 139.
▸ ESC OFF ROAD » page 140.
▸ TCS OFF ROAD » page 140.
▸ EDL OFF ROAD » page 140.
▸ ABS OFF ROAD » page 140.

Note

If the engine stalls while driving and is started again within 30 seconds, then OFF ROAD mode will be automatically activated.

Hill Descent Assistant

Read and observe ! and ! on page 138 first.

The hill descent assistant (hereinafter referred to as assist system), with its automatic braking action on all wheels, ensures a constant speed is maintained on a steep slope when driving forwards and reversing.

During an intervention of the assistant, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The assistant is automatically engaged under the following conditions.

✓ The engine is running.
✓ For vehicles with **Manual transmission** the shift lever is in the neutral position and or the 1st, 2nd, 3rd gear, or reverse gear is engaged.
✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever is in the R, N, D/S position or in the Tiptronic position.
✓ The downhill gradient is at least 10 % (when driving over sleepers, the limit can briefly drop to 8 %).
✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is operated.

Driving speed

Initiate the downhill decent at a reasonable speed up to 30 km / h the hill descent assist maintains this speed when driving downhill constant.

The assistant can maintain constant speed of about 2 - 30 km / h.

If a forwards or reverse gear is engaged for vehicles with **Manual transmission**, the speed must be high enough to avoid stalling the engine.

By pressing the accelerator or brake pedal, the speed can be increased or reduced. This is true even if the shift lever is in the neutral position and the selector lever in the N position. The engagement of the assistant is resumed after the pedal is released.

! WARNING

For the correct operation of the assistant the road surface must be sufficiently adherent. The assistant cannot properly fulfil its function on slushy soil due to physical reasons (e.g. ice or mud). - there is a risk of an accident!

Note

During an active intervention of the assistant, the brake lights do not light up.

ESC OFF ROAD

Read and observe ! and ! on page 138 first.

The ESC OFF ROAD makes driving on a dirt roads easier, as no ESC interventions occur when the vehicle is over or under steered.

TCSOFF ROAD

Read and observe ! and ! on page 138 first.

The TCS OFF ROAD makes starting and driving on an unpaved surface easier as it partially allows wheel-spin.

Note

When disabled, the TCS » page 136 OFF ROAD mode works without the support of the TCS OFF ROAD.

EDS OFF ROAD

Read and observe ! and ! on page 138 first.

The EDS supports OFF ROAD vehicle traction when driving on a surface with different grip under the drive wheels or when driving over bumps.

A spinning wheel or wheels are braked earlier and with more force than with the intervention of the standard EDS system.

ABS OFF ROAD

Read and observe ! and ! on page 138 first.

The ABS OFF ROAD supports the driver when braking on an unpaved surface such as gravel, snow, etc.

The system generated by a controlled locking of the wheels braked wheel before a "wedge" of piled material, which shortens the braking distance.

The system is only available, if the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position.

The system operates at speeds of up to 50 km/h.

Parking aid (ParkPilot)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function 141
Display in the Infotainment display 142
Activation / deactivation 142
Automatic system activation when moving forward 143

The parking aid (hereinafter referred to as system) draws attention via acoustic signals or the Infotainment display when manoeuvring around obstacles in the vicinity of the vehicle.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 135, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Moving persons or objects may not be recognized by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. For this reason, such people or objects may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people not to be recognised by the system.
- You should satisfy yourself before reversing that there is no small obstacle, such as a rock, thin post, trailer drawbar etc., in front or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.

CAUTION

- Keep the system sensors » Fig. 157 *on page 141* clean, and free from snow and ice, and do not cover with any objects of any kind, otherwise the system functioning may be limited.
- Under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures, etc.), the system function may be limited - "incorrect recognition of obstacle".
- Accessories additionally installed on the vehicle rear, such as bicycle carriers, can impair the system function.

Note

The display of obstacles in the Infotainment **black and white** display is described in the » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Function

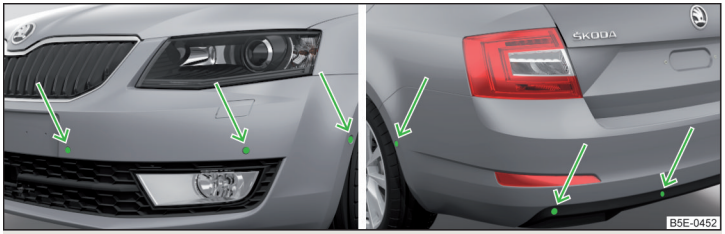


Fig. 157 **Installation position of the sensors on the left side of the vehicle: front/rear**

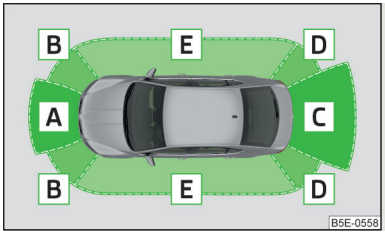


Fig. 158
Sampled areas and range of the sensors

Read and observe and on page 140 first.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. Depending on the vehicle equipment, the ultrasonic sensors are located in the back or in the front bumper » Fig. 157.

Depending on the equipment, the following system versions can exist » Fig. 158.

- Version 1: warns of obstacles in the areas C, D.
- Version 2: warns of obstacles in the regions A, B, C, D.
- Version 3: warns of obstacles in the regions A, B, C, D, E.

Approximate range of sensors (in cm)

Area » Fig. 158	Version 1 (4 sensors)	Version 2 (8 sensors)	Version 3 (12 sensors)
A	-	120	120
B	-	60	90
C	160	160	160
D	60	60	90
E	-	-	90

Audible signals

The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm - danger area. **From this moment on do not continue driving!**

The acoustic signals can be set in the Infotainment» *Owner´s Manual* , chapter *CAR - Vehicle Settings* .

Towing a trailer

When towing, or when another accessory is connected to the trailer socket only the areas A and B» Fig. 158 are active in the system.

Note

- If not all fields around vehicles with **Version 3** are shown after the system is activated, the vehicle will need to be moved a few metres forwards or backwards.
- The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.

Display in the Infotainment display

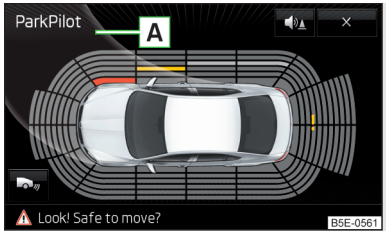


Fig. 159
Display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 140 first.

Function keys and obstacle warning » Fig. 159

A	Road display.
✖ / ⮌	Depending on the Infotainment type: Switching off park assistant display.
/	Switching audible parking signals on/off.
	Change to rear-view camera display .
⚠	Message: **Look! Safe to move?**
■	Colour of an object detected in the collision area (the distance to the obstacle is less than 30 cm). Stop driving in the direction of an obstacle!
■	Colour of an object detected in the manoeuvring area (the distance to the obstacle is more than 30 cm).
□	Colour of an object detected in the outside the manoeuvring area (the distance to the obstacle is more than 30 cm).
!	System failure (there is no indication of obstacles).

Road display
The roadway display varies depending on the steering angle A » Fig. 159 and displays the roadway on which the vehicle would take with the current steering wheel position.

The road **ahead** is displayed when a forward gear or Neutral is engaged or the selector lever is in mode **D/S** or position **N** is set.

The road **behind the vehicle** is displayed when reverse gear is engaged or the selector lever is in mode **R**.

Activation / deactivation



Fig. 160
System key (option 2, 3)

Read and observe ! and ! on page 140 first.

Activation
The activation of the system is initiated when the reverse gear is engaged, or vehicles with the **Variant 2 and 3** , also by pressing the symbol key P » Fig. 160.

This is confirmed by a short acoustic signal (the symbol P in the button lights up).

Deactivation
On vehicles with **Version 1**, the system can be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.

For vehicles with **Version 2 and 3**, the system is automatically deactivated by pressing the symbol key P or at a speed above 15 km/h (the P symbol in the button goes out).

Fault display
If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. The fault is also indicated by the symbol P flashing in the button. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note
The system can only be activated with the symbol key P at a speed of below approx. 15 km / hr.

Automatic system activation when moving forward



Fig. 161
Infotainment display: Display with automatic activation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 140 first.

The automatic system activation occurs when moving forward at a speed below 10 km / h when the vehicle approaches an obstacle.

After activation, the following is shown in the left pane of the Infotainment display » Fig. 161.

Acoustic signals are sounded as of a distance from the obstacle of around 50 cm.

The automatic display can be enabled or disabled in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Rear View Camera

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation ____ 143
Guidelines and function keys ____ 144

The rear view camera (hereinafter referred to as system) helps the driver when parking and manoeuvring by displaying the area behind the vehicle in the Infotainment display (hereinafter referred to as display).

! WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 135, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Make sure that the camera lens is not dirty or covered, otherwise the system function can be significantly impaired. For information on cleaning » page 185, *Camera lens*

! CAUTION

- The camera lens distorts and enlarges the field of view of the difference in eye sight. The display is therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to following vehicles.
- Some items, such as thin columns, chain link fences or lattice may not be represented adequately in terms of display resolution.
- It is only a two-dimensional display. Therefore, protruding objects or roadway depressions, for example, may not be recognised due to lack of space depth.
- In a crash or damage the vehicle's rear camera can possibly deviate from the correct position. If this is the case, have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.

Operation

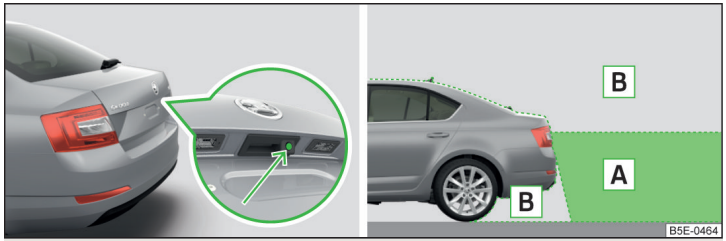


Fig. 162 **Position of the camera / Monitored area**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 143 first.

The camera for capturing the area behind the vehicle is in the grip of the boot lid » Fig. 162.

Supervised area » Fig. 162

A Detection range of the camera.
B Area outside the detection range of the camera.

The area behind the vehicle is displayed when the following conditions are met.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ Reverse gear is engaged.[1)]
✓ The luggage compartment lid is completely closed.
✓ The vehicle is not travelling at more than about 10 km/h.

Note

▪ The display can be interrupted by pressing the symbol key » Fig. 158 *on page 141*.
▪ After disengaging the reverse gear, automatic display of the parking aid is carried out (variant 2, 3) » page 141.

Guidelines and function keys

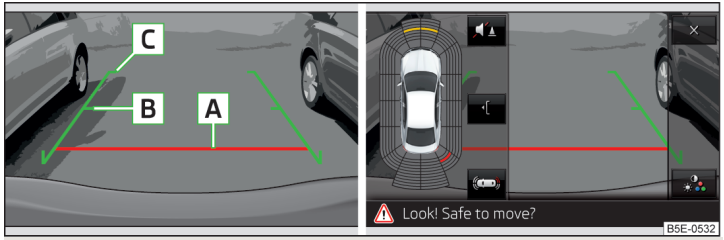


Fig. 163 **Infotainment display: Orientation lines / function keys**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 143 first.

Orientation lines are shown along with the monitored area behind the vehicle in the display.

Distance of the orientation lines behind the vehicle » Fig. 163

A The distance is about 40 cm (safety distance limit).
B The distance is approximately 100 cm.
C The distance is approximately 200 cm.

The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Function buttons » Fig. 163

✖ Turns off the display of the area behind the vehicle.
Display settings - brightness, contrast, colour.
/ Switching audible parking signals on/off.
/ Enabling and reduced park assistance display.
Change to park assistance display.

CAUTION

The objects shown in the display can be closer or even further away than they appear. This is especially the case in the following situations.
▪ Protruding objects, such as a hitch, the rear of a truck and the like.
▪ When driving from a horizontal surface into a slope or a depression.
▪ When driving from a slope or a depression onto a horizontal surface.

Note

The orientation lines are immobile, and therefore the spacing of the bars behind the vehicle will vary, depending on the vehicle load state and the road inclination.

Park Assist

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Functioning 145
Parking space search 146
Parking 146
Departing from a parallel parking space 147
Automatic brake assist 147
Information messages 147

Park Assist (hereinafter referred to as system) helps drivers park in suitable parallel and perpendicular parking places or also to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

The system takes over the steering movements when parking or leaving a parking space. The driver operates the pedals and the shift lever or gear selector.

[1)] The area behind the vehicle can be displayed for a few seconds more after disengaging the reverse gear.

The state in which the steering wheel is operated by the system, is referred to as **parking operation.**

The Park Assist is an extension of the parking aid » page 140 and operates on the basis of data collected by the ultrasonic sensors.

For this reason, the chapter on the parking aid is to be read carefully and the safety notes are to be observed.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 135, ! in section *Introduction*.
- During the parking process, the system automatically performs rapid steering movements. While it is doing so, do not place your hands between the steering wheel – risk of injury!
- During a parking manoeuvre on loose or slippery surfaces (gravel, snow, ice, etc.) you may stray from the calculated road. Therefore, do not use the system in such situations.

CAUTION

The correct evaluation of the parking space and the parking procedure depends on the circumference of the wheels on the vehicle.

- The system only works correctly if the vehicle is fitted with the wheel size approved by the manufacturer.
- Abstain from using the system when the vehicle is fitted with snow chains or a temporary spare wheel.
- If wheels other than those approved by the manufacturer are mounted, the resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space can differ slightly. This can be avoided by readjusting the system at a specialist garage.

CAUTION

If other vehicles are parked behind the kerb or on it, the system can also guide your vehicle beyond the kerb or onto it. Ensure that the wheels or the wheel rims of your vehicle are not damaged and if necessary intervene in time.

Note

- We recommend performing the parking at a safe speed to about 5 km / h.
- The driver can stop the parking process at any time by pressing the symbol key P » Fig. 164 *on page 146* or by a driver steering intervention.

Functioning

Read and observe ! and ! on page 145 first.

The system support is provided in the following manner.

- While the parking space search is going on, a measurement and evaluation of the parking space size is completed.
- Suitable parking spaces are shown in the display of the instrument cluster (hereinafter only in the display).
- The display shows instructions and information before the start and during the parking.
- The road way is calculated that the vehicle uses during the parking.
- The front wheels are automatically rotated during the parking.

Conditions for the system function

The system can look for a parking space only if the following basic conditions are met.

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The vehicle speed is less than 40 km / h (parallel parking).
- ✓ The vehicle speed is less than 20 km / h (transverse parking).
- ✓ The distance to a number of parked vehicles is approximately 0.5 - 1.5 m.
- ✓ The TCS is activated » page 135, *Braking and stabilisation systems*.

The system can only carry out the parking if the following basic conditions are met.

- ✓ The vehicle is travelling less than about 7 km/h.
- ✓ The parking procedure takes less than 6 minutes.
- ✓ There is no driver intervention in the automatic steering operation.

Activation/deactivation

The system can be enabled or disabled by pressing the symbol key P » Fig. 164 *on page 146* - A.

When the system is activated, the symbol P illuminates.

Parking space search

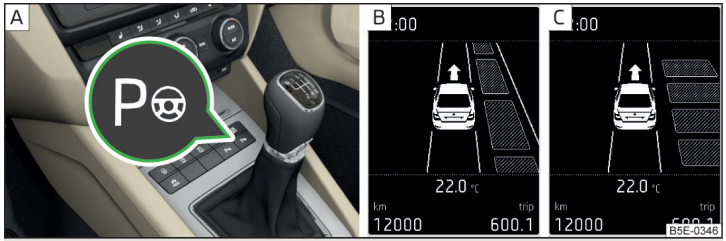


Fig. 164 **System button / display**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 145 first.

The system is able to find a parking space in a number of parallel and transverse parked vehicles on the passenger's or driver's side.

Search for a parking space parallel to the roadway
› Slowly drive past a row of parallel parked vehicles.
› Press the symbol button**once** » Fig. 164 - A.

The display shows the following » Fig. 164 - B.

Search for a parking space traverse to the roadway
› Slowly drive past a row of traverse parked vehicles.
› Press the symbol button**twice** » Fig. 164 - A.

The display shows the following » Fig. 164 - C.

Change sides for the parking
The system will automatically search for a parking space on the passenger side.

Activate the turn signal on the driver's side if you wish to look fro a parking space on this side of the road. The display changes and the system searches for a parking space on the driver's side.

Note
If the symbol (km / h) is shown in the display while you are looking for a parking space, the vehicle speed should be reduced below 40 km/h (parallel parking) or below 20 km/h (transverse parking).

Parking

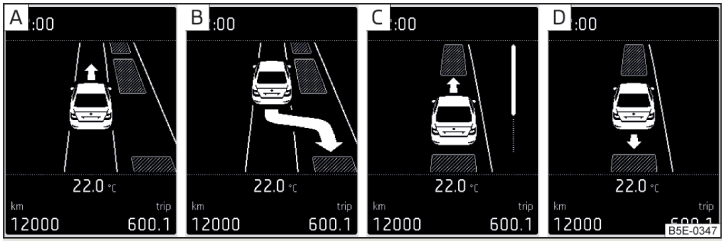


Fig. 165 **Display**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 145 first.

The system supports the driver when reverse parking in the parking space found in a number of traverse and parallel parked vehicles.

Display » Fig. 165
A Parking place recognised with the information to drive on.
B Parking space recognised with the information to reverse.
C Note to drive on to the parking space.
D Note to reverse to the parking space.

Parking manoeuvre
If the system finds a parking space, then this parking space is displayed » Fig. 165 - A.

› Continue driving forwards until the display appears » Fig. 165 - B.
› Stop and ensure that the vehicle does not continue to move forward until the parking procedure starts.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
› As soon as the following message is shown in the display: **Steering int. active. Check area around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
› Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.

If necessary, the parking procedure can be continued with further steps.

› If the arrow in the display is flashing to the front » Fig. 165 C, engage 1st gear or move the selector lever into the position **D**.

The display shows the icon (brake pedal).

› Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol ⦸ goes out.
› Carefully drive forwards.
› If the backwards arrow is flashing in the display » Fig. 165 - D, select reverse gear again or move the selector lever into position **R** .

The display shows the ⦸ icon (brake pedal).

› Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol ⦸ goes out.
› Carefully move backwards.

You can repeat these steps several times in succession.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display: **Park Assist stopped. Take over steering!**

Departing from a parallel parking space

Read and observe ! and ! on page 145 first.

The system supports the driver when leaving a parking space of a parallel parking space.

Leaving a parking space process
› Press the symbol button**once** P⦸ » Fig. 164 *on page 146* .

The following message is displayed: **Park Assist: indicate and engage reverse!**

› Activate the turn signal for side of the vehicle where the parking space is out of which you wish to manoeuvre.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.

The further procedure is analogous to that for reverse parking.

› Follow the system instructions shown in the display.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the information display: **Please take over steering and drive on.**

Automatic brake assist

Read and observe ! and ! on page 145 first.

Automatic brake assist when speeding
If a velocity of 7 km / h is exceeded during the parking manoeuvre for the first time, the speed will be automatically reduced by the system to less than 7 km / h. This prevents the parking manoeuvre from aborting.

Automatic emergency braking
If the system detects a risk of collision during parking, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

The parking is terminated by the emergency braking.

! CAUTION
The automatic emergency braking is not triggered by the system when the parking process stops due to the speed of 7 km/h being exceeded!

Information messages

Read and observe ! and ! on page 145 first.

The information messages are shown in the instrument cluster display.

Park Assist stopped. Speed too high.

If a speed of 50 km / h is exceeded while searching for a parking space, the system with the key symbol is P⦸ must be reactivated.

Speed too high. Take over steering!

The parking is terminated if the speed exceeds 7 km / hr.

Park Assist stopped. Driver steer. intervent.

The parking procedure is terminated due to a driver steering intervention.

Park Assist stopped. ASR deactivated.

The parking procedure cannot be carried out because the TCS system is deactivated » page 135, *Braking and stabilisation systems*. Activate the TCS.

ASR deactivated. Take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because TCS was deactivated during the parking procedure.

Trailer: Park Assist stopped.

The parking process cannot be performed with a trailer or when another accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Time limit exceeded. Take over steering!

The parking procedure was ended because the time limit of 6 minutes was passed.

Park Assist currently not available.

The system cannot be activated because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Park Assist stopped. Currently not available.

The parking procedure was ended because a fault exists on the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Park Assist faulty. Workshop!

The parking procedure is not possible because a fault exists in the system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

ASR intervention. Take over steering!

The parking procedure is terminated by a TCS intervention.

Aut. parking space exit not possible. Space too small.

The manoeuvring procedure using the system is not possible. The parking gap is too small.

Braking intervention. Speed too high.

The speed was too high during the parking and was automatically reduced.

Cruise Control System

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Functioning 148
Operating Description 149

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal.

The state where the CCS maintains the speed is referred to hereinafter as the **control**.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 135, ! in section *Introduction*.
- After pressing the clutch pedal, no interrupted control occurs! For example, if a different gear is engaged and the clutch pedal is released, control is continued.

Functioning

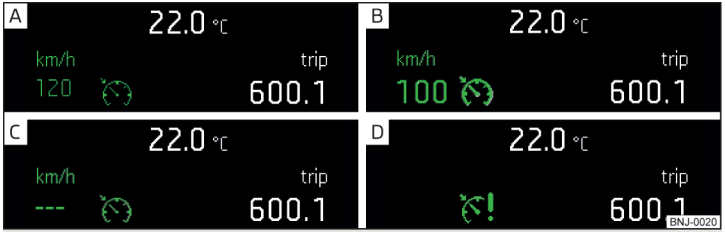


Fig. 166 **MAXI DOT display (monochrome): Examples of status displays the CCS**



Fig. 167 **Segment display: Examples of status displays the CCS**

Read and observe ! on page 148 first.

CCS status displays » Fig. 166, » Fig. 167

A Speed is set, control is inactive (in the colour display the digits of speed limits is shown in grey).

B Control active (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).

C No speed set.

D System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Basic requirements for start of control

✓ The CCS is activated.

✓ On vehicles with **manual transmission**, second gear or higher is engaged.

✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever is in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position.

✓ The current speed is higher than approx. 20 km/h.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

! WARNING

If the engine power or engine braking effect is insufficient to maintain the set speed, the driver must take control of vehicle operation.

Operating Description

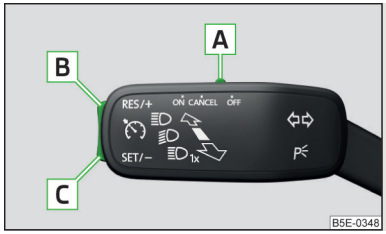


Fig. 168
Cruise control system controls

Read and observe ! on page 148 first.

Overview of the control elements of the CCS » Fig. 168

A	**OFF**	Deactivate CCS (delete set speed)
	CANCEL	Interrupt control (sprung position)
	ON	Activate CCS (control deactivated)
B	**RES/+**	Take control again[a] / Increase speed
C	**SET/–**	Launch control / reduce speed

[a] If no speed is set, the current speed is used.

At the start of the control process, the CCS regulates the vehicle to the current speed, and this speed is shown on the instrument cluster display. The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

Automatic control interruption

Automatic control interruption occurs if any of the following conditions are met.

- The brake pedal is operated.
- When one of the brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervenes.
- Through an airbag deployment.

! WARNING

- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent unintentional switching on of the system.
- Control may only be resumed if the set speed is not too high for the current traffic conditions.

Note

During control, speed can be increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 150
Automatic stop-start 151
Operation Overview 152
Start control 152
Stop/resume control 152
Set/change the desired speed 153
Set the clearance level 153
Special driving conditions 154
Information messages 155

The automatic distance control (hereinafter referred to as ACC) maintains the set speed or the distance to the vehicle ahead without the accelerator or brake pedal being pressed.

The front of the vehicle and the distance to the vehicle ahead is monitored by a radar sensor » page 135.

The state in which the ACC maintains the speed or the proximity is described as **control** from here on.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 135, ! in section *Introduction*.
- The driver must always be ready to take over steering of the vehicle himself (accelerate or brake).
- The ACC does not react when approaching a stationary obstacle, such as traffic jams, vehicle breakdowns or vehicles waiting at a traffic light.
- The ACC does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.
- If the ACC does not decelerate fast enough, immediately apply the vehicle's foot brake.

WARNING

For safety reasons, do not use the ACC under the following conditions.

- When driving in turning lanes, motorway exits or construction sites, to avoid an unwanted acceleration to the stored speed.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- When road conditions are poor (e.g. ice, slippery road, gravel, dirt road).
- When driving around "sharp" bends.
- When riding on a steep gradient / high slope.
- When driving through places where metal objects (such as metal buildings, railroad tracks, etc.) can be found.
- When driving through very divided and enclosed spaces (such as large-capacity garages, car ferries, tunnels and the like.).

Note

- The ACC is designed primarily for use on motorways.
- The ACC reduces the speed by automatically releasing the accelerator or by means of a braking procedure as appropriate. If the brakes are used for an automatic speed reduction at any moments, then the brake light illuminates.
- In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the connected trailer, the ACC becomes unavailable.
- The control automatically cancels the engagement of the brake supportive assistance systems (e.g. ESC) or when the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded.

Operation

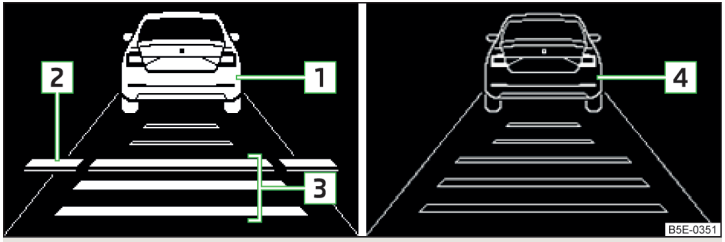


Fig. 169 **Display in the instrument cluster: Examples of ACC displays**

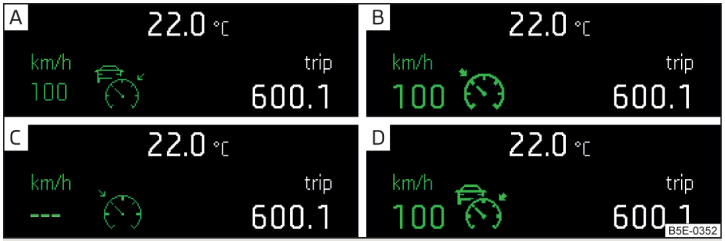


Fig. 170 **Instrument cluster display: Examples of ACC status displays**

Read and observe ! on page 150 first.

The ACC allows a speed of 30 - 160 km/h to be set or a distance to the preceding vehicle to be very short of very long to be set.

The ACC adjusts the set speed with respect to the detected vehicle ahead, thus maintaining the selected proximity.

The ACC can detect a vehicle that is up to approx. 120 m ahead using the radar sensor.

ACC display » Fig. 169

1 Vehicle detected (control active).
2 Line showing the displacement of the distance when setting » page 153, *Set the clearance level*.
3 Set distance to the vehicle ahead.
4 Vehicle detected (control deactivated).

ACC status displays » Fig. 170

A Regulation is inactive (in the colour display the digits of speed limits is shown in grey).
B Regulation active - no vehicle detected (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).
C Control deactivated - no speed stored.
D Regulation active - vehicle detected (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).

Note to reduce speed
If the delay of the ACC is insufficient in relation to the vehicle in front, in the instrument cluster, the warning light lights up and the display shows the following message.

Apply the brake!

Note
Some ACC notifications in the display of the instrument cluster may be hidden by notifications for other functions. An ACC notification automatically appears for a brief moment when there is a change in status of the ACC.

Automatic stop-start

Read and observe ! on page 150 first.

Vehicles with an **automatic transmission** can decelerate to a standstill and start moving again using the ACC.

Decelerate to a standstill
If a vehicle ahead decelerates to a standstill, the ACC will also decelerate your vehicle to a standstill.

Starting to drive again after a holding period
As soon as the vehicle ahead starts moving again after a holding period, your vehicle will also move and the speed will continue to be regulated. Control is automatically disconnected in case of longer holding periods.

Depress the brake pedal.

Operation Overview

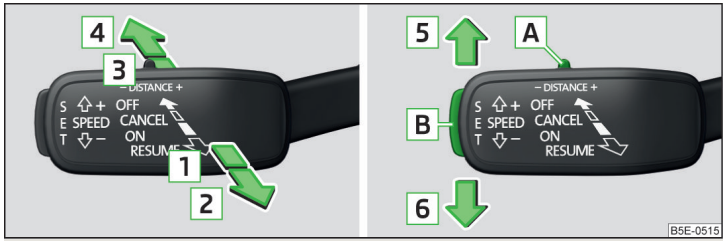


Fig. 171 **Operating lever**

Read and observe ! on page 150 first.

Overview of ACC functions operated with the lever » Fig. 171

1	**ON**	Activate ACC (control deactivated)
2	**RESUME**	Start control (resume) / increase speed by 1 km/h at a time (sprung position)
3	**CANCEL**	Interrupt control (sprung position)
4	**OFF**	Deactivate ACC
5	**SPEED +**	Increase speed by 10 km/h at a time
6	**SPEED –**	Decrease speed by 10 km/h at a time
A	**– DISTANCE +**	Set proximity level
B	**SET**	Start control (adopt current speed) / Reduce speed by 1 km/h at a time

Note

If the lever is set » Fig. 171 from the position **OFF** directly into the sprung position, **RESUME** the current speed is stored and the control process is started.

Start control

Read and observe ! on page 150 first.

Basic requirements for start of control

✓ ACC is enabled.

✓ TCS is enabled » page 135, *Braking and stabilisation systems*.

✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the second gear or higher must be engaged.

✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever must be in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position.

✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the current speed must be higher than approx. 25 km/h.

✓ On vehicles with a **automatic transmission**, the current speed must be higher than approx. 2 km/h.

The control be started with the key **SET** or by adjusting the lever **RESUME** » Fig. 171 *on page 152* into the sprung position.

Button SET

› Press **SET** press.

The ACC will adopt the current speed and execute control.

Lever position RESUME

› Set the lever into the sprung position **RESUME** set.

The ACC will adopt the current speed and execute control. Should the speed be stored already, the ACC adopts this speed and executes control.

The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster when the regulation is switched on.

Note

- If control is started at a speed of less than 30 km/h on vehicles with an automatic transmission, the speed of 30 km/h is stored. The speed increases automatically to 30 km/h or is regulated with respect to the speed of the vehicle ahead.
- When TCS is disabled, it will be activated automatically upon starting control.
- If the TCS is deactivated during control, control is stopped automatically.

Stop/resume control

Read and observe ! on page 150 first.

Stop control

› Set the lever into the sprung position **CANCEL** » Fig. 171 *on page 152* set.

Or

› Apply the brake.

Control stops, the speed remains stored.

Resume control

› Start control » page 152.

WARNING

Control may only be resumed if the stored speed is not too high for the current traffic conditions.

Note

Regulation is also stopped when the clutch is held down for longer than 30 s.

Set/change the desired speed

Read and observe ! on page 150 first.

The desired speed can be set or changed using the control lever » Fig. 171 *on page 152*.

The set speed is stored upon releasing the lever or the button on the button on the lever.

Setting/changing the speed by 10 km/h at a time (SPEED) - requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.

Increasing the speed by 1 km/h at a time (RESUME) - requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.

✓ Vehicle control is taking place.

Decreasing the speed by 1 km/h at a time (SET) - requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.

✓ Vehicle control is taking place.

Changing the speed by adopting the current speed (SET) - requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.

✓ The vehicle is moving at a speed **other** than that which is stored.

Note

- If during control the speed is increased by pressing the accelerator, control is temporarily stopped. Upon releasing the accelerator, control is automatically resumed.
- If during control the speed is reduced by applying the brake, control is stopped. Control needs to be restarted in order to resume » page 152.
- If the vehicle is controlled by a lower speed than the stored speed, then **SET** the current speed is stored the first time the key is pressed. Press the key again **SET** and the speed is reduced in increments of 1 km/h.

Set the clearance level

Read and observe ! on page 150 first.

The proximity to the vehicle ahead can be set with the lever » Fig. 171 *on page 152* or in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Setting by means of the lever

› Set the switch **DISTANCE** Adjust in the spring-tensioned position + or - » Fig. 171 *on page 152*.

The display of the instrument cluster shows line 2 » Fig. 169 *on page 150*, which indicates the proximity.

› Using the switch **DISTANCE** Adjust the line 2 to the desired distance level on the lever.

Note

- If the proximity is changed in infotainment, the change will only come into effect after a subsequent activation of the ACC.
- The proximity is dependent on the speed. The higher the speed, the greater the proximity to the vehicle ahead.
- On wet roads, a longer time interval to the vehicle ahead should always be selected than on dry roads.

Special driving conditions

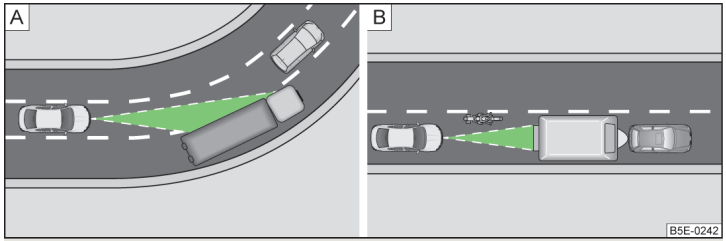


Fig. 172 **Special conditions: Cornering / narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side**

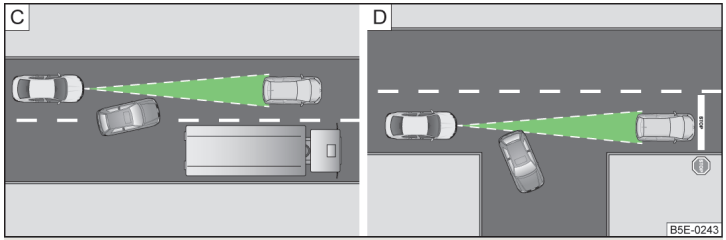


Fig. 173 **Special conditions: Lane changes of other vehicles / stationary vehicles**

Read and observe ! on page 150 first.

The following and similar situations require special attention of the driver.

When cornering
When driving around long bends the ACC may respond to a vehicle in the adjacent lane » Fig. 172 - A. Your own vehicle is regulated with respect to this vehicle and will no longer respond to the vehicle ahead.

In such cases, control should be disabled by accelerating, applying the brake or pressing the button on the operating lever . **CANCEL** » Fig. 171 *on page 152*.

Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side
Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side are not detected by the radar sensor until they are within the sensor's range » Fig. 172 - B.

If necessary, slow down the car by applying the brake.

Other vehicles changing lanes
Vehicles that change onto the lane with a small proximity » Fig. 173 - C do not have to be detected by the radar sensor in time. The result may be a delayed ACC response.

If necessary, slow down the car by applying the brake.

Stationary vehicles
The ACC does not detect stationary objects! When a vehicle detected by the ACC turns or sheers off and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle, » Fig. 173 - D the ACC does not respond to the stationary vehicle.

In such cases, take over the steering and stop the vehicle by applying the foot brake.

When overtaking
When your vehicle is being controlled (the speed is lower than that which is stored) and the indicator is activated, the ACC interprets this situation as meaning that the driver intends to overtake. The ACC automatically accelerates the vehicle, thereby reducing the proximity to a vehicle ahead.

If the vehicle changes to the fast lane and no vehicle is detected ahead, the ACC accelerates until the set speed is reached and then keeps it constant.

Acceleration can be cancelled at any time by touch on the brake pedal or pressing the button **CANCEL** on the lever » Fig. 171 *on page 152*.

Vehicles with special load or special body parts
Other vehicles with a load or with body parts protruding from the sides, back or top of the vehicle contour may not be detected by the ACC.

Control should therefore be disabled whenever you are driving behind or overtaking such a vehicle.

Towing a trailer
When towing, or in when another accessory is connected to the trailer socket the ACC control is set with a lower rate. The manner of driving should therefore be adapted to this limitation.

Information messages

Read and observe ! on page 150 first.

The information messages are shown in the instrument cluster display.

ACC: no sensor view!

The sensor is soiled or covered.

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and clean the sensor or remove the item causing the lack of visibility » Fig. 154 *on page 135*.

If the message appears again after starting the engine, the position of the lever should be **OFF** » Fig. 171 *on page 152* adjusted.

ACC not available.

The ACC is not available for an unknown reason.

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If the ACC is still not available, push the lever into position **OFF** . Seek help from a specialist garage.

Error: ACC

There is an ACC system error.

Push the lever into position . **OFF** press. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Speed limit

Increase the speed accordingly and start control» page 152.

Front Assist

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 155
Distance warning (dangerous distance) 156
Warning and automatic braking 156
Disable/enable 156
Information messages 157

The Front Assist (hereinafter referred to as system) warns you of the danger of a collision with a vehicle or another obstacle in front of the vehicle, and tries to avoid a collision or mitigate its consequences by automatically applying the brakes where necessary.

The area in front of the vehicle is monitored by a radar sensor » page 135.

! WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 135, ! in section *Introduction*.
- The system does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.

! CAUTION

In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the electrically connected trailer, the system becomes unavailable.

Operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 155 first.

The system support is provided in the following manner.

- Alerts you about a dangerous proximity to the vehicle ahead.
- Warns you of an impending collision.
- Prepares the brakes for emergency braking prior to a detected danger.
- Assists with a brake action triggered by the driver.
- If the driver fails to respond to a detected danger, automatic braking is performed.

The system can work only if the following basic conditions are met.

✓ The system is activated.
✓ TCS is enabled » page 135, *Braking and stabilisation systems*.
✓ The vehicle is travelling forwards at a speed of more than approx. 5 km/h.

i Note

The system can be impaired or may not be available, for example when driving in "sharp "curves or with an ESC engagement » page 136.

Distance warning (dangerous distance)

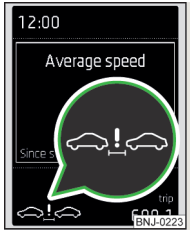


Fig. 174
Symbols in the instrument cluster: Note (dangerous proximity)

Read and observe ! and ! on page 155 first.

If a safe interval to the vehicle ahead falls below a minimum the display of the instrument cluster shows the symbol » Fig. 174.

Immediately increase the proximity if the current traffic situation allows you to do so!

The proximity at which the warning is displayed depends on the current speed.

The warning may occur when driving between about 60 km/h and 210 km/h.

Warning and automatic braking



Fig. 175
Symbols in the instrument cluster: Warning or emergency braking at low speed

Read and observe ! and ! on page 155 first.

Emergency braking at low speed
In a driving speed range of approx. 5 km/h to approx. 30 km/h, the automatic braking action is not preceded by a warning. In the event of an immediate risk of impact, automatic braking is carried out with the breaking force increasing in stages.

With automatic braking the symbol appears » Fig. 175 in the display.

Advance warning
If the system detects a risk of collision, the symbol » Fig. 175 appears in the display and you will hear an acoustic signal.

At the same time, the braking system is prepared for possible emergency braking.

The pre-warning display can occur in the following situations.
- If there is a risk of collision with a moving obstacle at a driving speed range of approx. 30 km/h to approx. 210 km/h.
- If there is a risk of collision with a stationary obstacle at a driving speed range of approx. 30 km/h to approx. 85 km/h.

When the advance warning is issued, the brake pedal must be pressed or the moving obstacle avoided!

Acute alert
If the driver does not react to the advance warning, the system briefly applies the brake automatically via an active brake intervention to draw attention to the potential danger of a collision again.

Automatic Braking
If the driver fails to respond to the acute warning, the system starts to apply the brakes automatically with increasing stopping power in several stages.

Brake Support
If the driver does not brake sufficiently in the event of an impending collision, the system automatically increases the braking force.

The brake support only occurs as long as the brake pedal is being firmly pressed down.

Note
- If an automatic brake intervention is triggered by the system, the pressure in the brake system increases and the brake pedal cannot be operated with the normal pedal stroke.
- The automatic braking interventions can be cancelled by pressing the accelerator pedal or by means of a steering intervention.

Disable/enable

Read and observe ! and ! on page 155 first.

The function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on. ▸

The system should only be disabled in exceptional cases » !.

The system can be activated or deactivated in one of two ways.
- In the instrument cluster display » page 48, *Menu item* **Assist systems**.
- Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

The following functions can be activated or deactivated separately in infotainment.
- Distance warning
- Advance warning

f the distance-warning function was deactivated before switching off the ignition, it remains deactivated after switching on the ignition.

! WARNING

In the following situations, Front Assist should be switched off for safety reasons.
- When the vehicle is being towed away.
- When the vehicle is on a rolling test bench.
- If an unfounded warning was issued or a system action carried out.
- When on a truck, car ferry or similar.

Information messages

Read and observe ! and ! on page 155 first.

The information messages are shown in the instrument cluster display.

Front Assist: no sensor view.

The sensor is soiled or covered.

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and clean the sensor or remove the obstacle causing the lack of visibility » page 135, *Radar sensor*.

If after engine start the message persists, then the help of a professional organisation is required.

Front Assist not available.

The system is not available for an unknown reason.

Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again.

If after engine start the message persists, then the help of a professional organisation is required.

Selection of the driving mode (Driving Mode Selection)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Normal 157
Sport mode 157
Eco mode 158
Individual mode 158
Off-road mode 158
Mode selection and Infotainment display 159
Individual mode settings 159

By selecting the driving mode, the driving behaviour can be adapted to the desired mode of operation.

The following modes of operation are available **Normal**, **Sport**, **Eco**, **Individual** and **Off-road**.

The mode **Off-road** is only available on the vehicles Octavia SCOUT.

! WARNING

The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 135, ! in section *Introduction*.

Normal

Read and observe ! on page 157 first.

This mode is suitable for a conventional driving.

Sport mode

Read and observe ! on page 157 first.

This mode is suitable for a sporty driving.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems.

Steering
The power steering is reduced slightly, i.e., the driver needs to exert more force for steering .

Engine / drive
The vehicle acceleration is more dynamic than in **Normal** mode.

Front axle differential lock
The driving force distribution between the front wheels is adapted to the sporty driving style.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
The acceleration is quicker than in **Normal** mode with distance control » page 150.

Xenon headlight
The headlamps adapt to the driving style more dynamically than in mode **Normal** » page 70.

ProActive passenger protection
The first level of protection is deactivated » page 160.

Engine noise
The engine noise is noticeable in the interior more intensely than in **Normal** mode.

Eco mode

Read and observe ! on page 157 first.

This mode is suitable for a relaxed style of driving and helps to save fuel.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems.

Engine / drive
Vehicle acceleration is more relaxed than in **Normal** mode.

The recommended gear is controlled such to achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption » page 41.

When the START-STOP system was deactivated manually » page 124, it is automatically activated.

The automatic gearbox is set automatically to mode **E** » page 129.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
Acceleration occurs more relaxed than in **Normal** » page 150mode with distance control.

Xenon headlight
The system is in economic mode » page 70. The headlamps are in basic setting and do not adapt to the direction of travel.

Air conditioning (Climatronic)
The air conditioning is controlled so as to save energy. For this reason, for example, it may take longer to reach the desired interior temperature in mode **Normal**.

Note

- The mode **Eco** is not available when towing a trailer or when another accessory is connected to the trailer socket. If the vehicle is in drive mode **Eco** and a trailer is hitched up or another accessory is connected, the vehicle is automatically set to the driving mode **Normal**.
- The maximum vehicle acceleration (kick down function) is possible also in driving mode **Eco**.

Individual mode

Read and observe ! on page 157 first.

In the mode **Individual** each system can be set independently » page 159, **Individual** *mode settings*.

Off-road mode

Read and observe ! on page 157 first.

The mode **Off-road** is suitable for driving outside paved roads.

Further information » page 138, *OFF ROAD-mode*.

Note
The mode **Off-road** is deactivated after switching off and switching on the ignition and the mode **Normal** is set automatically.

Mode selection and Infotainment display



Fig. 176 **Button for selecting the driving mode: Version 1 / version 2**

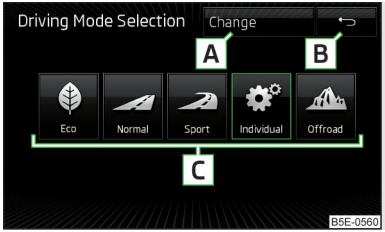


Fig. 177
Shown in the infotainment display

Read and observe ! on page 157 first.

Procedure for the selection of the driving mode

› Press the symbol button MODE or MODE » Fig. 176.

In the Infotainment display a running mode menu » Fig. 177 appears.

The mode is changed by repeatedly pressing the symbol key MODE and MODE or by pressing the corresponding function key in the Infotainment display.

If a driving mode other than **Normal** is selected, then the symbol lights up on the button MODE or MODE.

Function buttons on the display » Fig. 177

A Sets the mode **Individual** and information on the setting of the currently selected mode.

B Cancel the menu to select driving mode.

C Modes (for the selected mode the button is shown in green).

Note

- The currently selected running mode is displayed in the Infotainment in the status bar of the main menu of the symbol.
- If the driving mode menu is not operated within a few seconds, the Infotainment switches to the last selected menu or switches off.

Individual mode settings

Read and observe ! on page 157 first.

In mode **Individual** the vehicle systems can be set as follows.

- **Steering:** - Sets the power steering characteristics
  - **Normal** - Normal
  - **Sport** - Sports
- **Engine:/Drive:** - Sets the engine characteristic (vehicles with manual transmission) / drive characteristic (vehicles with automatic transmission)
  - **Normal** - Normal
  - **Sport** - Sports
  - **Eco** - Economical
- **Front differential lock:** - Sets the characteristics of the front axle differential lock
  - **Normal** - Normal
  - **Sport** - Sports
- **ACC:** - Sets the vehicle acceleration when adaptive cruise control is activated
  - **Normal** - Normal
  - **Sport** - Sports
  - **Eco** - Economical
- **Dynamic cornering light:** - Sets the characteristics of the Xenon headlight
  - **Normal** - Normal
  - **Sport** - Sports
  - **Eco** - Economical
- **Air conditioning:** - Sets the Climatronic characteristics
  - **Normal** - Normal
  - **Eco** - Economical
- **Engine sound:** - Sets the engine noise in the vehicle
  - **Normal** - Normal
  - **Sport** - Sports
  - **Eco** - Economical
- **Reset mode** - Setting for all menu items in the **Individual** mode to **Normal**
  - **Cancel** - Keep the current settings
  - **Reset** - Set all menu items to **Normal**

Proactive passenger protection (Crew Protect Assist)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function 160

Proactive passenger protection (hereafter known as system) increases passenger protection in the front seats in situations that could lead to vehicle impact or overturning.

WARNING

The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 135, ! in section *Introduction*.

Note

The system component service life is monitored electronically. Further information » page 35, *Safety systems*.

Function

Read and observe ! on page 160 first.

In critical driving situations (e.g. during emergency braking or a sudden change in direction), the following steps can be taken separately or combined in order to reduce the risk of serious injury.

- The front passenger's and driver's seatbelts, if worn, are automatically **tensioned** closely over the body.
- The windows in the side doors (if open) are automatically closed up to a gap of about 5 cm from the edge.
- The sliding/tilting roof is closed.

Once the critical driving situation has passed, the tension on the seatbelts will be released again.

The system operates at two levels of protection.

The first level of protection

The system already intervenes in situations that may occur during dynamic driving. As a result, this primarily helps to keep the driver and the passenger in the correct seated position.

The first protection level can be deactivated in one of the following ways.

- The system deactivation in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.
- Deactivation of TCS » page 136.
- Selecting the driving mode **Sport** » page 157.

Provided that the driving mode **Sport** is not selected, the system is activated over the two levels of protection after switching the ignition off and on again.

The second level of protection

The system intervenes only if the situation is evaluated as critical, such as in panic braking at high speeds.

This level of protection cannot be deactivated.

Note

If the front passenger front airbag is deactivated » page 19 the belt tensioning function for the front passenger seat is switched off.

Lane Departure Warning (Lane Assist)

Introduction

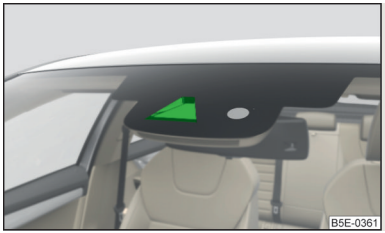


Fig. 178
Camera viewing window for Lane Assist

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 161
Activation / deactivation 162
Information messages 162

The lane departure warning (hereinafter known as system) helps to keep the vehicle between the boundary lines of a lane.

The system detects the boundary lines of a lane using the camera » Fig. 178.

When the vehicle approaches a detected line between lanes, the system makes a **light** movement of the steering wheel in the opposite direction to the boundary line. This corrective steering intervention can be manually overridden at any time.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 135, in section *Introduction*.
- Lane Assist can help you keep the vehicle within the lane. However, it does not steer the vehicle for you. The driver retains full responsibility for steering at all times.
- Some objects on the road may be incorrectly detected as lines. As a result, an incorrect steering intervention may take place.

WARNING

The detection capability of the camera may be limited by various external influences. In such cases, the assistant may not detect the line between two lanes at all or not properly. The detection capability of the camera may be restricted in the following situations, for example.

- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- When driving around "sharp" bends.
- The camera is blinded by the sun.
- The camera is blinded by the oncoming traffic.
- The viewing range of the camera is impeded by a vehicle travelling ahead.
- The camera viewing range is obstructed by an obstacle.

CAUTION

Do not attach any stickers or similar objects to the windscreen to avoid impairing the functions of the systems.

Note

- The system is designed for driving on motorways and roads with adequate longitudinal markings.
- The system can detect both continuous and broken lines.

Operation

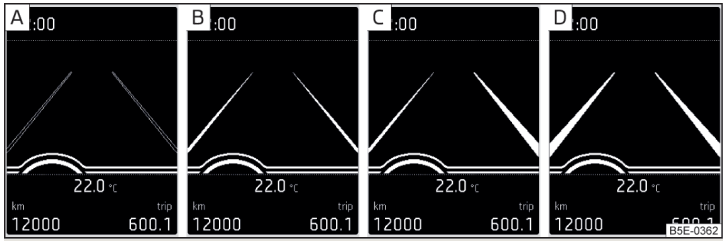


Fig. 179 **Monochromatic display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system indications**

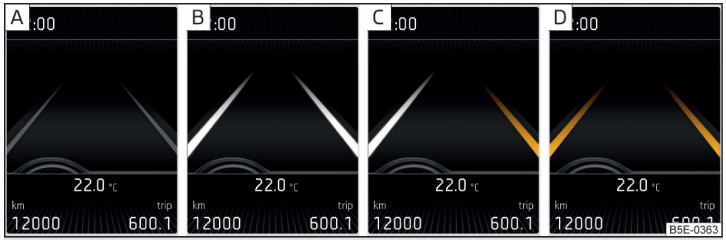


Fig. 180 **Colour display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system indications**

Read and observe and on page 161 first.

System displays» Fig. 179 and » Fig. 180

A The system is activated, but not ready to intervene.
B The system is active and ready to intervene.
C The system intervenes when approaching the right-hand boundary lane.
D Adaptive lane assist ensues (boundary lines on both sides of the vehicle detected).

The system can intervene when the following basic conditions are present.

✓ The system is activated.
✓ The vehicle speed is no more than about 65 km/h.

✓ The boundary lines are clearly visible (appropriate longitudinal markings).
✓ The boundary line of at least one side of the lane is detected.
✓ The driver's hands are on the steering wheel.
✓ The lane is more than 2.5 m in width.

If the turn signal is switched on prior to driving over the boundary line (e.g. when making a turn), no steering intervention takes place when the vehicle approaches the boundary line. The system regards the situation as an intended lane change.

Warning lights in the instrument cluster

Warning light	Meaning
	The system is active, but not ready to intervene.
	The system is active and ready to intervene or is currently intervening.

Adaptive lane assist
Adaptive lane assist helps to keep the vehicle in the position between the boundary lines selected by the driver, by means of steering intervention.

If the system detects only one boundary line, it will help to maintain the selected proximity from said boundary line.

If the proximity to the detected boundary line is changed, the system quickly adapts and maintains the newly-selected position.

WARNING
The system function may be restricted if, for example there is danger due to ruts on a downhill road or in a crosswind.

Activation / deactivation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 161 first.

The activation or deactivation of the system can be carried out in one of two ways.
▸ In the instrument cluster display » page 48, *Menu item* **Assist systems**.
▸ Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Adaptive tracking can also be enabled or disabled In Infotainment.

After switching off and switching on the ignition, the system setting is retained.

Information messages

Read and observe ! and ! on page 161 first.

The information messages are shown in the instrument cluster display.

Lane Assist currently not available. No sensor view.

The windscreen is dirty, iced over or misted up in the camera viewing range. Clean the windscreen or remove the obstacles.

Lane Assist currently not available.

The system has limited functionality due to a temporary error. Try to re-activate the machine.

Error: Lane Assist

A system error has occurred. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Lane Assist: take over steering!

The system has detected that there are no hands on the steering wheel. In this case the Assist system is not ready to intervene. Place your hands on the steering wheel.

Traffic sign recognition

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function 163
Additional display 164
Information messages 164

The road sign recognition system (hereinafter referred to as system) shows certain road signs on the instrument cluster display.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 135, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Vertical traffic signs must always take precedence over the traffic signs shown in the display. The driver is always responsible for correctly assessing the traffic situation.
- Traffic signs may not be recognised at all by the system, or may be recognised incorrectly. As a result, the traffic signs may not be displayed at all, or the wrong one may appear.
- On the system side, only a traffic sign display is undertaken, neither a warning when limit is exceeded or driving speed adjustment is undertaken!
- Speed specifications on the displayed road signs refer to the country-specific speed units. For example, the display ㉚ on the display can therefore refer to km/h or mph depending on the country.

Note

The system is only available in some countries.

Function

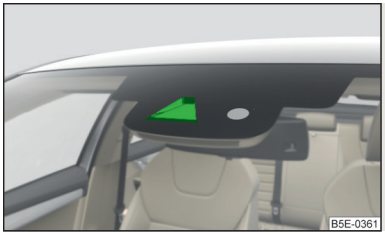


Fig. 181
Camera viewing range for traffic sign recognition

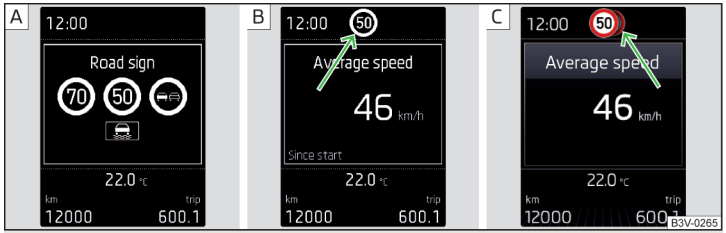


Fig. 182 **Display in the instrument cluster: Display examples**

Read and observe ! on page 163 first.

Description of indications and displayed traffic signs

Display » Fig. 182

A Display of detected traffic signs in the menu item **Driving data** → **Road sign**

B Additional display (monochromatic display)

C Additional display (colour display)

The system can display in the display the following recognized traffic sign.

- Speed limits.
- Overtaking prohibited.

Additional signs, such as 'when wet' or signs which only apply for a limited time can also be displayed.

The system works on the basis of the data captured by the camera and is only able to show traffic signs which are in the camera's "viewing range" » Fig. 181.

Data from the camera is supplemented by information from the Infotainment Navigation. This is the reason why traffic signs with maximum speeds can also be shown on sections of roads which do not have any traffic signs.

Mode when towing a trailer

For vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device the display for the trailer operation applicable road signs can be enabled or disabled in the Infotainment display » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle Settings*.

The system may not be available or may only be available to a limited extent in the following situations.

- Poor visibility conditions, e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall.
- The camera is blinded by the sun.
- The camera is blinded by the oncoming traffic.

- The camera "viewing range" is obstructed by an obstacle.
- Travelling at high speed.
- The traffic signs are fully or partially obscured (e.g. by trees, snow, dirt or other vehicles).
- The traffic signs are not standard (round with a red border).
- The traffic signs are damaged or bent.
- The traffic signs are attached to flashing neon signs.
- The traffic signs were changed (the navigation data are out of date).

Additional display

Read and observe ! on page 163 first.

If the menu item **Road sign** is currently not shown » Fig. 182 *on page 163* - A, the road sign with the speed limit will appear in the upper display area of the instrument cluster » Fig. 182 *on page 163* - B, C.

If several traffic signs are detected simultaneously, the next traffic sign will also in some cases be displayed in the colour display - C. All detected traffic signs can be displayed in the menu item **Road sign** - A.

The additional display can be enabled or disabled in the Infotainment» *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Information messages

Read and observe ! on page 163 first.

The information messages are shown in the instrument cluster display.

No road signs available.

No maximum speeds were recognised (e.g. on German motorways where there is no speed limit).

Error: Road sign recognition

A system error has occurred. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Road sign recognition: clean the windscreen!

The windscreen is dirty, iced over or misted up in the camera viewing range. Clean the windscreen or remove the obstacles.

Dynamic Road Sign Display currently restricted.

Infotainment Navigation is not currently providing any data. Check whether the maps are up-to-date or the whether the vehicle is currently in a location for which no navigation data are available.

Fatigue detection

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function 164
Information messages 165

The fatigue detection system (hereinafter referred to as system) recommends the driver takes a break from driving when driver fatigue can be detected due to the driver's steering behaviour.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 135, ! in section *Introduction*.
- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Note

- In some situations, the system may evaluate the driving incorrectly and thus mistakenly recommend a break (e.g. sporty driving, adverse weather conditions or poor road conditions).
- The system is designed primarily for use on motorways.

Function

Read and observe ! on page 164 first.

From the start of the journey, the system evaluates steering behaviour. If, while driving, there have been changes in the steering behaviours that are evaluated by the system as indicating possible fatigue, a break recommendation is issued.

The system evaluates steering behaviour and recommends a break at speeds of 65-200 km / h.

The system detects a break from driving when one of the following conditions is met.

- The vehicle is stopped and the ignition is turned off.
- The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt is taken off and the driver's door is opened.
- The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.

If none of these conditions are met or if the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

The system can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Information messages

Read and observe ! on page 164 first.

The icon appears and the following message for a few seconds in the display of the instrument cluster and the following message.

M **Driver alert. Take a break!**

S **DRIVER ALERT TAKE A BREAK**

An audible signal is also emitted.

Tyre pressure monitoring

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Saving tyre pressure values ____ 165
Saving tyre pressure values and infotainment display ____ 166
Saving tyre pressure values by pressing a button ____ 166

The tyre pressure monitoring function (hereinafter referred to as the system) monitors the tyre pressure while driving.

If the tyre inflation pressure changes, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and an audible signal is heard.

Information on the procedure for the notification of a change in tyre inflation pressure » page 35.

The system can only function properly if the tyres have the prescribed inflation pressure and these pressure values are stored in the system.

! WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 135, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Having the correct tyre inflation pressure is always the driver's responsibility. Tyre inflation pressure must be checked regularly » page 205.
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage.

Saving tyre pressure values

Read and observe ! on page 165 first.

The tyre pressure values are always stored in the system if one of the following events occurs.

- Change of tyre inflation pressure.
- Change one or more wheels.
- Change in position of a wheel on the vehicle.
- The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the tyre pressure values are stored either in Infotainment or by pressing a button.

! WARNING

Before storing the pressure values, the tyres must be inflated to the specified inflation pressure » page 205. If incorrect pressure values are saved, the system may also not issue a warning even if the tyre inflation pressure is too low.l

! CAUTION

The tyre pressure values must be saved every 10,000 km or once annually in order to ensure correct system functioning.

Saving tyre pressure values and infotainment display



Fig. 183
Button for storing the pressure values/example of the display: the system indicates a pressure change in the front-right tyre

Read and observe ! on page 165 first.

› Inflate all tyres to the prescribed pressure.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Infotainment switches on.
› Press the button CAR in the Infotainment and then in the display the function keys one after the other, **Vehicle status**.
› Using the function keys, ◀ ▶ select the menu item *Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator*.
› Press the function key **SET** » Fig. 183 button.

Follow the instructions that appear on the display.

A message in the display provides information about the storage of the tyre pressure values.

Note

When warning light lights up in the instrument cluster, the affected tyre can be displayed in Infotainment » Fig. 183.

Saving tyre pressure values by pressing a button



Fig. 184
Button for storing the pressure values

Read and observe ! on page 165 first.

› Inflate all tyres to the prescribed pressure.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold » Fig. 184 the symbol key.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster.

An acoustic signal sounds and the warning light goes out - this indicates that the tyre pressure values have been saved.

› Release the symbol key .

Hitch and trailer

Hitch

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Description 167
Adjusting the ready position 168
Correctly adjusted ready position 168
Assembling the bar ball – Step 1 169
Assembling the bar ball – Step 2 169
Check proper fitting 170
Removing the bar ball – Step 1 170
Removing the bar ball – Step 2 171
Mount accessories 171

The maximum trailer drawbar load is **75 kg**.

For vehicles with all-wheel drive, the maximum trailer nose weight is **80 kg.**

With G-TEC-vehicles, the maximum trailer drawbar load is **56 kg** .

The draw bar load information on the type plate of the towing device is merely a test value for the towing device. The vehicle-specific information is detailed in the vehicle documents.

WARNING

- Before each time you make a journey when using the ball rod, check that it is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess.
- Do not use the ball rod if it is not correctly inserted into the mounting recess and secured.
- Do not use the towing hitch if it is damaged or if there are parts missing.
- Do not perform any modifications or changes to the towing device.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing device clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball rod from being attached securely!

CAUTION

- Take care when using the ball rod - there is a risk of paint damage to the bumper.
- When the ball rod is removed always place the cover onto the mounting recess - there is a danger of soiling the mounting recess.

Note

- Operation and maintenance of the tow hitch » page 186.
- The towing vehicle by means of the detachable ball rod » page 222.
- If the towing device is removed completely, it must be replaced with the original reinforcement of the rear bumper which is part of the mount for the towing eye.

Description

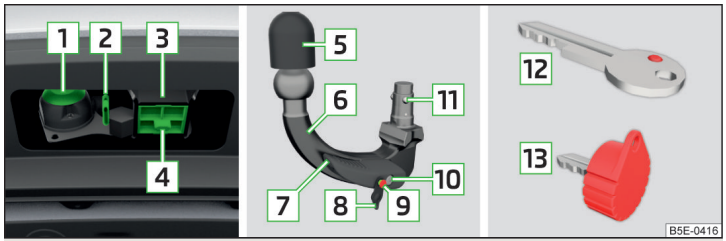


Fig. 185 **Support for the hitch equipment / ball bar / key (Version 1 and 2)**

Read and observe and on page 167 first.

The ball rod can be removed and is located in the spare wheel well or in a compartment for the spare wheel in the luggage compartment.

The hitch comes with two key versions. The handling of the hitch is identical for the two key versions. The difference is only in the key version.

Support for the towing device and tow bar » Fig. 185

1 13-pin power socket
2 Safety eye
3 Mounting recess
4 Cap
5 Dust cap
6 Ball rod
7 Operating lever
8 Lock cap
9 Trigger pin
10 Lock
11 Locking ball

12 Key – Version 1
13 Key – Version 2

Note
If you lose the key, please get in touch with a specialist garage.

Adjusting the ready position

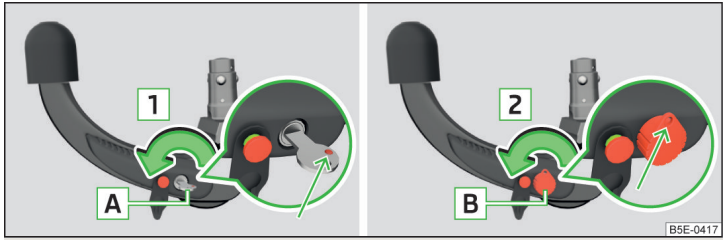


Fig. 186 **Gear 1 Step: Key Version 1 / key Version 2**

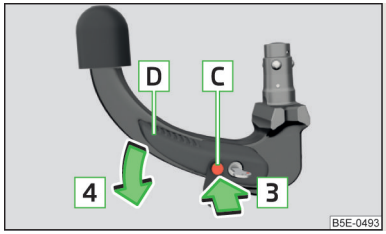


Fig. 187
Step 2: Both key versions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 167 first.

The ball rod must be set to the ready position prior to installation » page 168, *Correctly adjusted ready position*.

If it is not in the ready position, then it must be set to the ready position as follows.

Gear 1 Step - applies to the key version 1
› Remove the cap from the lock
› Insert key A into the lock so that the green marking is pointing upwards.
› Turn key A in the direction of arrow 1 so that the red marking is pointing upwards » Fig. 186.

Gear 1 Step - applies to the key version 2
› Remove the cap from the lock
› Insert key B into the lock so that the eye of the key is pointing downwards.
› Turn the key in the direction of arrow B 2 so that the conclusions release shows up » Fig. 186.

Gear 2 Step - applies to both key versions
› Grip the tow bar below the protective cap.
› Push release pin C in the direction of arrow 3 to the stop, and simultaneously push operating lever D in the direction of arrow 4 to the stop » Fig. 187.

Operating lever D remains locked in this position.

Correctly adjusted ready position

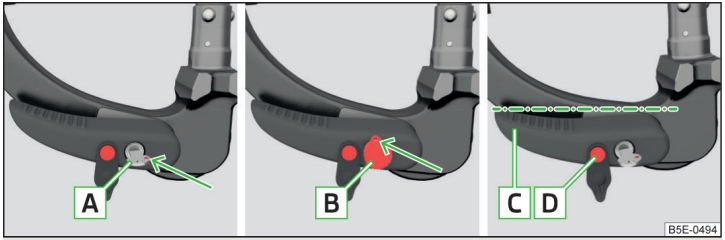


Fig. 188 **Ready position: Key Version 1 / key Version 2 / position of the lever and the release bolt with two key versions**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 167 first.

Correctly adjusted standby position » Fig. 188
✓ Applies to key version 1 - the red marking on key A is pointing upwards.
✓ Applies to key version 2 - the eye of the key B is pointing upwards.
✓ Operating lever C is locked in the lower position.
✓ The trigger pin D can be moved.

The ball bar is thus set ready for installation.

CAUTION

In the ready position, the key cannot be removed nor turned into a different position.

Assembling the bar ball – Step 1

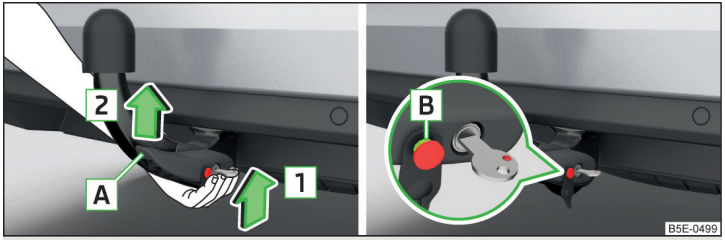


Fig. 189 **Insert ball rod / trigger bolt in the extended state**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 167 first.

Insert ball rod - applies to both key versions

› Remove the cover for the mounting recess 4 » Fig. 185 *on page 167* in a downwards direction.
› Adjust the ball rod to the ready position » page 168.
› Grip the tow bar **from underneath** » Fig. 189 and insert into the mounting recess in arrow direction 1 until you hear it click into place » !.

The lever A **automatically** turns upwards in the direction of arrow 2 and the release pin B pops out (both its red and green parts are visible) » !.

If lever A does not turn automatically, or if the release pin B does not pop out, remove the ball rod from the mounting recess by turning lever A downwards as far as it can go. Clean the contact surfaces on the ball rod and the mounting recess.

WARNING

- Keep your hands outside the lever's range of motion when attaching the ball rod – risk of finger injuries!
- Never attempt to pull the operating lever violently upwards to turn the key. Doing so would mean the ball rod is not attached correctly!

Assembling the bar ball – Step 2

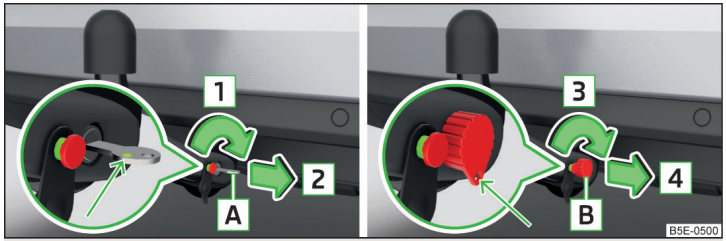


Fig. 190 **Lock lock: Key Version 1 / key Version 2**

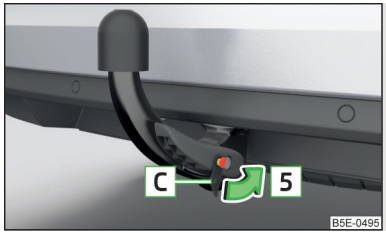


Fig. 191
Place cap on the lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 167 first.

To begin with, follow the first step for the ball rod assembly » page 169.

Applies to the key version 1

› Turn key A in the direction of arrow 1 so that the green marking is pointing upwards » Fig. 190.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 2.

Applies to key version 2

› Turn the key B in the direction of arrow 3 so that the conclusions release points down » Fig. 190.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 4.

Applies to both key versions

› Fit and press cap C onto the lock in the direction of arrow 5 » Fig. 191.
› Check that the ball rod is securely attached » page 170, *Check proper fitting*.

CAUTION

After removing the key, always replace the cover on the lock – there is a risk of the lock getting dirty.

Check proper fitting

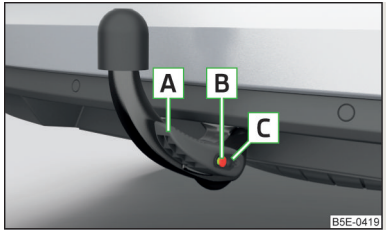


Fig. 192
Correctly connected tow bar

Read and observe ! and ! on page 167 first.

Before each use of the ball rod, check that it is attached properly.

Correctly secured ball head » Fig. 192

- ✓ The ball rod does not come off the mounting recess even after strong "shaking".
- ✓ Operating lever A is as far up as possible.
- ✓ The release pin B is completely exposed (both its red and green parts are visible).
- ✓ The key is removed.
- ✓ The cap B is on the hand-wheel.

WARNING

Do not use the towing device unless the ball rod was properly locked!

Removing the bar ball – Step 1

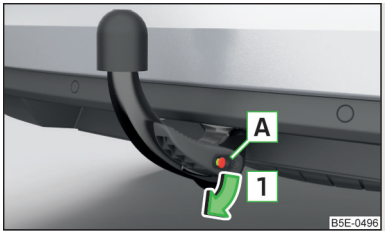


Fig. 193
Remove the cap from the lock

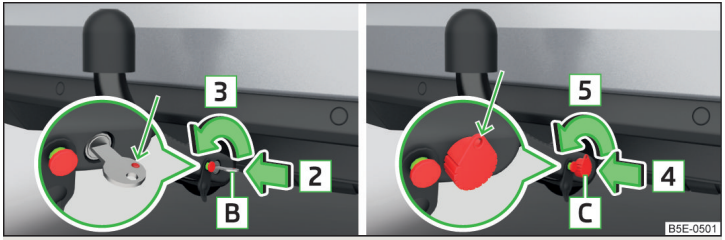


Fig. 194 **Unlock lock: Key version 1 / key version 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 167 first.

Applies to both key versions

› Remove the cover A from the lock in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 193.

Applies to key version 1

› Insert key B into the lock in the direction of arrow 2 so that the green marking is pointing upwards.

› Turn key B in the direction of arrow 3 so that the red marking is pointing upwards » Fig. 194.

Applies to key version 2

› Insert key C into the lock in the direction of arrow 4 so that the eye of the key is pointing downwards.

› Turn key C in the direction of arrow 5 so that the eye of the key is pointing upwards » Fig. 194.

WARNING

Never remove the tow bar while the trailer is still coupled.

Note

We recommend putting the protective cover onto the ball head before removing the tow bar.

Removing the bar ball - Step 2

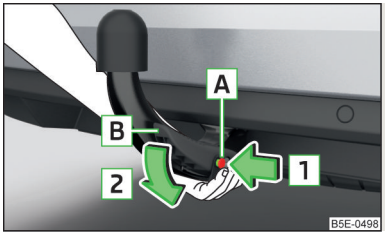


Fig. 195
Release ball bar

Read and observe and on page 167 first.

To begin with, follow the first step for the ball rod assembly » page 170.

Release ball head - applies to both key versions

› Grasp the ball rod from **below** » Fig. 195.
› Push release pin A in the direction of arrow 1 to the stop, and simultaneously push operating lever B in the direction of arrow 2 to the stop .

The ball rod is released in this position and falls freely into the hand. If it does not fall freely into the hand, use your other hand to push it upwards.

At the same time, the ball rod latches into the ready position and is therefore ready to be re-fitted » .

› Place the cap 4 » Fig. 185 *on page 167* onto the mounting recess.

WARNING

Never allow the ball rod to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage to the boot upon sudden braking, and could put the safety of the occupants at risk.

CAUTION

- If lever B is held firmly and not pushed downwards to the stop, it will move back up after the ball rod is removed and will not latch into the ready position. The ball rod will then need to be brought into this position before the next time it is fitted » page 168, *Adjusting the ready position*.
- Store the ball rod in the box in the ready position and with the key facing upwards - otherwise there is a risk of damage to the key!
- Do not use excessive force when handling the operating lever (e.g. do not climb on it)!

Note

Remove any dirt from the ball rod before stowing it away in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

Mount accessories

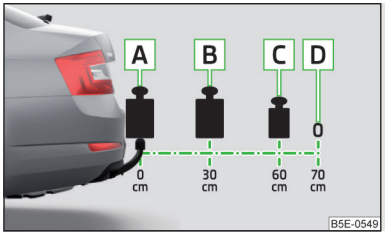


Fig. 196
Depiction of the maximum permissible protrusion of the ball head of the towing hitch and of the permissible total weight of the accessory including the load, depending on the load centre of gravity

Read and observe and on page 167 first.

An accessory (e.g. bicycle carrier) can be mounted on the ball head of the towing hitch.

If this accessory is used, the maximum permissible protrusion of the ball head of the towing hitch and the permissible total weight of the accessory including the load must be observed.

The maximum permissible protrusion of the ball head of the towing hitch is **70 cm** » Fig. 196.

The total permitted weight of the accessory including load changes with increasing distance of the load centre of gravity from the ball head of the towing hitch.

Distance of the load centre of gravity from the ball head	Permissible total weight of the accessory, including load			
	» Fig. 196	Vehicles with front-wheel drive	Vehicles with four-wheel drive	G-TEC vehicles
0 cm	A	75 kg	75 kg	56 kg
30 cm	B	75 kg	75 kg	56 kg
60 cm	C	35 kg	35 kg	28 kg
70 cm	D	0 kg	0 kg	0 kg

WARNING

- Never exceed the permissible gross weight of the accessory including load - there is a risk of damaging the towing device.
- Never exceed the permissible protrusion of the ball head including towing device - there is a risk of damaging the towing device.

Note

We recommend that you use accessories from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Trailer

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Attaching and detaching trailers ____ 172
Loading a trailer ____ 173
Trailer load ____ 173
Trailer operation ____ 176
Anti-theft alarm system ____ 177

The trailer can be hitched to the ball head of the towing device.

Attaching and detaching trailers

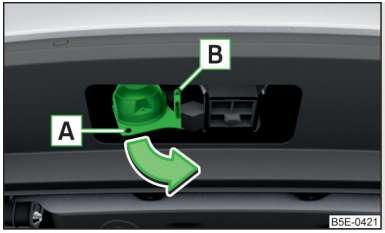


Fig. 197
Swivel out the 13-pin power socket, safety eyelet

Connect and disconnect

› Fit the ball rod.
› Grip the 13-pin socket at point A and swing out in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 197.
› Lift off protective cap 5 » Fig. 185 *on page 167* .
› Place the trailer onto the ball head.
› Plug the trailer cable into 13-pin socket A » Fig. 197.

If the trailer that is to be towed has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

› Hook the breakaway cable of the trailer to the security eyelet B.

The breakaway cable of the trailer must **sag** in all trailer positions relative to the vehicle (sharp curves, reversing and the like).

Uncoupling takes place in reverse order.

Exterior mirrors
You should have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors.

Headlights
The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.

Adjust the headlights using the headlight beam control » page 68, *Operating the lights*[1].

Power to the trailer power grid
For the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer, the trailer's power supply is provided by the vehicle.

The power supply works with ignition on or off.

With the ignition off, the battery of the towing vehicle is discharged by activated consumers.

At low charge state of the vehicle battery power to the trailer is interrupted.

WARNING
- Improperly connected trailer electrical installations may cause accidents or serious injury due to electric shock.
- Work on the electrical system must only be carried out by specialist garages.
- Never directly connect the trailer's electrical system with the electrical connections for the tail lights or other current sources.

WARNING (Continued)
- After attaching the trailer and connecting the power socket, check that the rear lights on the trailer are working correctly.
- Never use the safety eye to tow a vehicle!

CAUTION
Improperly connected trailer electrical installations may cause malfunction of the entire vehicle electronics.

Note
- The total power consumption of all the connected consumers on the trailer must not exceed 350 watts.
- Coat the ball head of the towing device with a suitable grease whenever necessary.

Loading a trailer

Distribution of the cargo
Distribute the cargo in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the trailer axle as possible. Secure the items from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Drive at a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Tyre pressure
Correct the tyre inflation pressure on the vehicle for a "full load" » page 205.

WARNING
Sliding cargo can significantly adversely affect stability and driving safety - risk of accident!

Trailer load

The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances. ▶

[1] Applies to vehicles with xenon headlights.

Permissible trailer load - Octavia

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
		Gradients of up to 12%	Gradients of up to 8%[a)]	
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	MG	1100	1300	610
1.2 l/81 kW TSI	MG	1300	1500	610
	DSG	1300	1500	620
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	MG	1400	1700	690
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1500	1800	620
	DSG	1500	1800	630
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	MG	1100	1300	600
	AG	1100	1300	620
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	MG	1600	1800	650
	DSG	1600	1800	660
	DSG 4x4	1600	1800	710
1.6 l/66 kW TDI CR	MG	1400	1700	640
1.6 l/81 kW TDI CR	MG5	1500	1800	650
	MG6	1000	1300	640
	MG 4x4	1700	2000	700
	DSG	1500	1800	650
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	MG	1600	1800	660
	DSG	1600	1800	670
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG	1600	1800	660
	MG 4x4	2000	2000	710
	DSG	1600	1800	670
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	1800	2000	730

[a)] Only valid for some countries.

Permissible trailer load - Octavia RS

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
		Gradients of up to 12 %	Gradients of up to 8%[a)]	
2.0 l/162 kW TSI	MG	1600	1800	710
	DSG	1600	1800	720

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
		Gradients of up to 12 %	Gradients of up to 8%[a)]	
2.0 l/169 kW TSI	MG	1600	1800	720
	DSG	1600	1800	730
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	MG	1600	1800	720
	DSG	1600	1800	730
	DSG 4x4	1800	2000	750

a) Only valid for some countries.

Permissible trailer load - Octavia Combi

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
		Gradients of up to 12 %	Gradients of up to 8%[a)]	
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	MG	1100	1300	620
1.2 l/81 kW TSI	MG	1300	1500	620
	DSG	1300	1500	630
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	MG	1400	1700	700
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1500	1800	630
	DSG	1500	1800	640
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	MG	1100	1300	610
	AG	1100	1300	620
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	MG	1600	1800	660
	DSG	1600	1800	670
	DSG 4x4	1600	1800	720
1.6 l/66 kW TDI CR	MG	1400	1700	650
1.6 l/81 kW TDI CR	MG5	1500	1800	660
	MG6	1000	1300	640
	MG 4x4	1700	2000	710
	DSG	1500	1800	660
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	MG	1600	1800	670
	DSG	1600	1800	680

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
		Gradients of up to 12 %	Gradients of up to 8%[a)]	
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG	1600	1800	670
	MG 4x4	2000	2000	720
	DSG	1600	1800	680
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	1800	2000	730

a) Only valid for some countries.

Permissible trailer load - Octavia Combi RS

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
		Gradients of up to 12 %	Gradients of up to 8%[a)]	
2.0 l/162 kW TSI	MG	1600	1800	720
	DSG	1600	1800	730
2.0 l/169 kW TSI	MG	1600	1800	730
	DSG	1600	1800	740
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	MG	1600	1800	730
	DSG	1600	1800	740
	DSG 4x4	1800	2000	750

a) Only valid for some countries.

Permissible trailer load - Octavia Combi Scout

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
		Gradients of up to 12 %	Gradients of up to 8%[a)]	
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	1600	1800	750
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG 4x4	2000	2000	750
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	1800	2000	750

a) Only valid for some countries.

WARNING

The maximum permissible axle and drawbar load and the permissible weight of the trailer must not be exceeded - risk of accident!

Trailer operation

Driving speed

For safety reasons, do not drive faster than 80 km/h when hitching a trailer.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes
Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

WARNING
Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

CAUTION
If you tow a trailer frequently, you should also have your vehicle inspected between service intervals.

Anti-theft alarm system

If the vehicle is locked, the alarm is activated when the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer is coupled or uncoupled » page 58.

Conditions for including a trailer in the anti-theft alarm system.
- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and a towing device.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer is functional.
- ✓ The vehicle is locked and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

CAUTION
For technical reasons, trailers with rear LED lights cannot be connected to the anti-theft alarm system.

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance

Service work, adjustments and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle operation in different weather conditions 178
Statutory checks 178
ŠKODA Service Partners 179
ŠKODA Original parts 179
ŠKODA Original accessories 179
Spoiler 180
Component protection 180
Airbags 180
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles 181

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition. After carrying out modifications, repairs or technical alterations, the vehicle will comply with German road transport regulations (StVO).

Always consult a ŠKODA Partner » page 179before buying accessories or parts, or before carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

WARNING

- Work on your vehicle, which have been carried out unprofessionally, can cause operational faults – risk of accident!
- Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. The operational safety of the vehicle may be at significant risk and can lead to increased wear of parts.

For the sake of the environment

Technical documents regarding changes carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user, in order to be handed over to the recyclers later. This ensures that vehicle recycling is in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

- We recommend only having these modifications, repairs and technical changes performed by a specialist garage.
- Any damage caused by technical alterations made without the approval of the manufacturer is excluded from the warranty » *Service schedule*.
- The ŠKODA Partner accepts no liability for products that have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. even though these may be products with an operational approval or that have been approved by a government testing institute.
- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts can be purchased from ŠKODA Partners, who will also perform the professional assembly of the purchased parts.

Vehicle operation in different weather conditions

Read and observe ! on page 178 first.

If you would like to operate your vehicle in countries other than those with its intended weather conditions, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

He or she will advise you if certain precautions need to be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle or to prevent damage.

This relates to the coolant, the battery replacement etc.

Statutory checks

Read and observe ! on page 178 first.

Many countries have legislation requiring the operational reliability and roadworthiness and/or exhaust gas properties of a vehicle to be tested at specific intervals. These tests can be carried out by workshops or testing stations that have been legally authorized for this purpose.

The ŠKODA Service Partners are up-to-date on the legally required tests and will prepare the vehicle for the tests as part of a service operation if required, or will be responsible for carrying out these tests. The specialist garages can carry out the specified tests directly if required by the customer if they are authorised to do so. This saves you time and money.

Even if you want to take your vehicle to an officially approved test centre for prior checking in preparation of a legally required test, we recommend that you consult the service consultant of your ŠKODA Service Partner beforehand.

Based on their appraisal, the service consultant will tell you which areas you should focus on in order to ensure that your vehicle will pass the technical test without any problems. This allows you to avoid additional expenses resulting from a possible subsequent test.

ŠKODA Service Partners

Read and observe ! on page 178 first.

ŠKODA Service Partners feature modern, specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have access to a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Original Parts and ŠKODA Original Accessories for carrying out modifications, repairs and technical alterations.

All ŠKODA service partners operate according to the most recent guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly prepared to service your vehicle and to provide quality work. We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Original parts

Read and observe ! on page 178 first.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s.. They correspond precisely to the ŠKODA AUTO a.s. regulations with regard to design, dimensional accuracy and material, and are identical to the components used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. is able to vouch for the safety, suitability and long service life of these products. We therefore recommend that you only use ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. supplies the market with a complete range of ŠKODA Genuine Parts - not only while the model is still in production but for at least 15 years after the end of series production for wear parts and at least 10 years after the end of series production for all other vehicle parts.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the invoices for these components for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term can be verified.

Body repairs
ŠKODA vehicles are designed such that if any damage occurs to the body, it is only necessary to replace those parts that are actually damaged.

However, before you decide to have damaged body parts replaced, you should first of all contact your specialist garage to determine whether or not the parts can also be repaired. Repairs to body parts are usually cheaper.

ŠKODA Original accessories

Read and observe ! on page 178 first.

If you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle, you should remember the following:

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has selected these accessories to ensure that they are reliable, safe and suitable for your particular vehicle. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or vouch for other products even though in some instances such parts may have operational approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

All accessory products are subjected to a challenging process in the areas of technical development (technical testing) and quality inspection (customer testing), and the product only becomes a ŠKODA Genuine Accessory if all tests are passed.

Our ŠKODA Genuine Accessories service also includes expert advice and professional fitting if required by the customer.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the invoices for these accessories for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term can be verified.

ŠKODA Service Partners also stock a range of suitable car care products and all parts that are subject to natural wear-and-tear, such as tyres, batteries, bulbs and wiper blades.

Note

The accessories authorized by the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. will be offered by the ŠKODA Partners in all countries where the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has a sales and after-sales service network. This will usually be in the form of a printed catalogue of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories, in the form of separate printed brochures or in the form of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories on the ŠKODA Partner websites.

Spoiler

Read and observe ! on page 178 first.

If your new vehicle is fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the spoiler on the luggage compartment lid, the following instructions must be adhered to.

- For safety reasons, the vehicle must only be fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the associated spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- This kind of spoiler cannot be left on the front bumper either on its own, in combination with another spoiler not on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

WARNING

- If work on your vehicle's spoilers is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries.
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. The front brakes may overheat which can have a negative impact on the functioning of the braking system – risk of accident!

Component protection

Read and observe ! on page 178 first.

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection.

Component protection has been developed as a protection mechanism for the following situations.

- Impairment of factory- or garage-fitted electronic components after installation in another vehicle (for example, after a theft).
- Impairment of electronic components used outside the vehicle.
- The possibility of a legitimate installation or change of electronic components for repairs at a specialist garage.

The activated component protection can be realized by functional limitations of the specific electronic component. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Airbags

Read and observe ! on page 178 first.

WARNING

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system – risk of accident and fatal injury!
- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tire combinations, can alter the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- Never install any airbag parts into the vehicle that have been removed from old cars or have been recycled.
- Never install damaged airbag parts in the vehicle. The airbags may then not be triggered properly or not at all in the event of an accident.

WARNING

- No modifications of any kind must be made to parts of the airbag system.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.
- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

WARNING

The airbag system operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can have a negative impact on the function of the airbag system. Any work on the front doors and their door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Never drive with inner door panels removed.
- Never drive if parts of the inner door panel have been removed and the resulting openings have not been properly sealed.
- Never drive if the loudspeakers in the doors have been removed, unless the loudspeaker openings have been properly sealed.
- Always make sure that the openings are covered or filled if additional loudspeakers or other equipment parts have been installed in the inner door panels.

Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles

Read and observe ! on page 178 first.

ŠKODA meets the requirements of the brand and its products with regard to protecting the environment and the preserving resources. All new ŠKODA vehicles are 95% recyclable.

Note

You can find more detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of old cars from a specialist garage.

Washing vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Washing by hand 181
Automatic car wash systems 182
Washing with a high-pressure cleaner 182

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain on the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the **underside of the vehicle** at the end of the winter.

WARNING

When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!

CAUTION

The temperature of the water used for cleaning must not exceed 60 °C – risk of damaging the vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle at washing bays intended for this purpose.

Washing by hand

Read and observe ! and ! on page 181 first.

Soak the dirt with plenty of water and rinse as well as possible.

Clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing glove** or a washing brush. Work from the top to the bottom – starting with the roof.

For stubborn dirt, agents specifically intended for this purpose are to be used.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

WARNING

Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor or the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Only apply slight pressure when cleaning the vehicle's paintwork.
- Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight – risk of paint damage.

Automatic car wash systems

Read and observe ! and ! on page 181 first.

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows and the sliding/tilting roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc., it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the lips of the wipers should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

CAUTION

Before driving through a car wash fold in the exterior mirrors - there is a risk of damage.

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

Read and observe ! and ! on page 181 first.

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

CAUTION

- The films should not be washed with any high-pressure cleaners - there is a risk of damage » page 183.
- Do not aim the water jet directly at the lock cylinders or the door or opening joints when washing the vehicle in the winter – there is a risk of freezing.
- The sensors of the parking aid can be sprayed only for a short time and there must be a minimum distance of 10 cm - there is a risk of damage.

Cleaning vehicle exterior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle paint work 183
Films 183
Plastic parts 184
Rubber seals 184
Chrome and anodized parts 184
Windows and external mirrors 184
Headlight glasses 185
Camera lens 185
Door closing cylinder 185
Cavity protection 185
Jack 185
Wheels 185
Towing hitch and mounting recess 186
Under-body protection 186
Wiper blades 186

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of your vehicle's exterior, we recommend that the cleaning and care of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Vehicle paint work

Read and observe and on page 183 first.

Preserving the vehicle paintwork

Thorough wax treatment is an effective way of protecting the paintwork from harmful environmental influences.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly.

Even if you use a wax preserver regularly we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Polishing

Polishing is necessary if the vehicle's paintwork has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservatives.

If the polish does not contain any preserving elements, the paint must be treated with a preservative afterwards.

CAUTION

- Paint damage is to be repaired immediately.
- Never apply wax to the windows.
- Mat painted or plastic parts must not be treated with polishing products or hard waxes.
- Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
- Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- If possible, do not apply any paint care products to parts of the bodywork that come into contact with door seals or window guides.

Films

Read and observe and on page 183 first.

Cleaning

Films (e.g. roof, decorative, protective films, etc.) must be cleaned more carefully than the vehicle paint.

The films may not be washed with a high-pressure cleaner.

Only wash the films with a soft cloth, mild soap solution and clean, warm water.

Service life

Environmental influences (e.g. sunlight, humidity, air pollution, rockfall) affect the life of the films.

Sunlight may also affect the strength of the film colour.

Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal; this is not a fault.

CAUTION

- Never use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents for the glued surfaces with films - there is a danger of film damage.
- Never use dirty cloths or chemical solvents for the glued surfaces with films - there is a danger of damaging the film.
- In the winter months, do not use an ice scraper to remove ice and snow from the areas with films. Do not use any other objects to remove frozen layers of snow or ice – risk of film damage.
- Do not polish the films - risk of damage!
- When transporting a load on the roof rack (e.g. roof box or similar), there is an increased risk of film damage (e.g. of chipping from the secured load).

Plastic parts

Read and observe ! and ! on page 183 first.

Clean plastic parts with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the plastic parts, use cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

! CAUTION

Do not use paint care products on plastic parts.

Rubber seals

Read and observe ! and ! on page 183 first.

All door seals and window guides are factory-treated with a colourless matt varnish layer to prevent the freezing of painted body parts and to protect against driving noise.

! CAUTION

- Do not treat the door seals and window guides with **any** products.
- Applying additional treatments to the seals can corrode the protective coating, and driving noise may occur.

Chrome and anodized parts

Read and observe ! and ! on page 183 first.

First clean the chrome parts and anodized parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the parts, use cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

! CAUTION

- Do not polish the chrome parts and anodized parts in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.
- Never use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents for these parts - there is risk of damage.

Windows and external mirrors

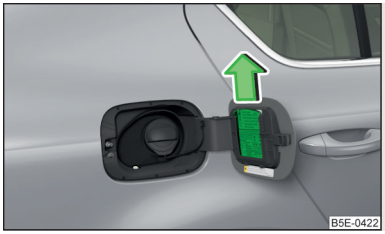


Fig. 198
Fuel filler flap: Remove ice scraper

Read and observe ! and ! on page 183 first.

Removing snow and ice

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors.

The ice scraper can be found on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

› Open the fuel filler flap.
› Slide out the ice scraper in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 198.

Cleaning windows

Regularly clean windows from the inside with clean water.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a cloth intended for this purpose.

! CAUTION

Instructions for removing snow and ice

- The ice scraper should not be moved forward and backward but in one direction to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.
- Snow or ice that is contaminated with coarse dirt such as fine gravel, sand or salt must not be removed from the windows and mirrors – there is a risk of damage to the surface of the windows and mirrors.
- Do not remove snow or ice from glass parts using warm or hot water – risk of cracks forming in the glass.
- Make sure that when removing snow and ice from the windows, the labels attached to the vehicle by the factory are not damaged.

CAUTION

Information for cleaning windows

- Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp-edged objects or corrosive and acidic cleaning agents – there is a risk of damaging the heating elements or window aerial.
- When drying the windows after washing the vehicle, do not use window leathers that have been used to polish the bodywork. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can dirty the window and reduce visibility.

Headlight glasses

Read and observe and on page 183 first.

Clean plastic front headlight lenses using clean, warm water and soap.

CAUTION

- The headlights are **never** to be wiped dry - there is a risk of damaging the protective lacquer and the headlight glass subsequently developing cracks.
- Do not use sharp objects to clean the glasses - there is a risk of damaging the protective lacquer and the headlight glasses subsequently developing cracks.
- Do not use any aggressive cleaning or chemical solvent products to clean the headlights – risk of damaging the headlight lenses.

Camera lens

Read and observe and on page 183 first.

Moisten the lens of the rear view camera first with clean water and then dry with a dry cloth.

Remove the snow from the lens with a brush and the ice from the lens with de-icing agents specifically developed for these purposes.

CAUTION

- Remove snow or ice on the lens with warm or hot water - there is a risk of damaging the lens.
- Never use cleaners containing abrasive effect to clean the lens.
- Never use pressurized water or steam jet to clean the lens.

Door closing cylinder

Read and observe and on page 183 first.

Specific products must be used for de-icing door lock cylinders.

CAUTION

Make sure that as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinder when washing the vehicle - there is a risk of freezing the lock cylinder!

Cavity protection

Read and observe and on page 183 first.

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

Wax protection does not require to be inspected or re-treated.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

WARNING

Safety regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax – risk of fire!

Jack

Read and observe and on page 183 first.

The jack is maintenance-free.

If necessary, the moving parts of the jack should be lubricated with a suitable lubricant.

Wheels

Read and observe and on page 183 first.

Wheel rims

Also thoroughly wash the wheel rims when washing the vehicle on a regular basis.

Regularly remove salt and brake abrasion, otherwise the rim material will be corroded.

Light alloy wheels
After washing thoroughly and treat the wheel rims with a protective product for light alloy wheels.

For the treatment of wheel rims do not use products which may cause damage to the paint on the rims.

CAUTION

- Damage to the paint layer on the wheel rims must be touched up immediately.
- Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt.

Towing hitch and mounting recess

Read and observe and on page 183 first.

Seal the mounting recess with the cap to prevent any ingress of dirt.

In the event of dirt, clean the interior surfaces of the mounting recess and treat with a suitable preservative.

Always check the ball head before attaching a trailer. Apply suitable grease where necessary.

Include the protective cap when stowing away the ball rod to protect the boot from getting contaminated.

CAUTION

Apply grease to the inner part of the mounting recess. Make sure you do not remove any grease.

Under-body protection

Read and observe and on page 183 first.

The underside of your vehicle is already permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

It is not possible to guarantee that the protective coating will not suffer any damage as the vehicle is driven.

We recommend having the protective coating underneath the vehicle and the chassis checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

WARNING

Never use additional underbody protection or anti-corrosion agents for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filters or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances might ignite - risk of fire!

Wiper blades

Read and observe and on page 183 first.

Clean the wiper blades regularly with a glass cleaner. The wiper blades should be cleaned with a sponge or cloth if they are heavily soiled by insect residues, for example.

The wiper blades can become soiled with wax residues after washing in automatic vehicle wash systems for example.

Interior care

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Natural leather 187
Artificial leather, materials and Alcantara® 187
Seat covers 188
Safety belts 188

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.

CAUTION

- Be sure to check clothing for colour-fastness to avoid any damage or visible stains on the material (leather), panels and textiles.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc., from the material (leather), panels and textiles as quickly as possible.
- Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dash panel – there is a risk of damage to the dash panel.
- Do not attach any stickers to the filaments or glass antenna - there is risk of damage.
- Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush – risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
- Cleaner that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.
- Apply only a small amount of the cleaning and care product.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA service partner.

Natural leather

Read and observe and on page 187 first.

The leather needs, depending on the strain placed on it, regular cleaning and maintenance.

Dust and dirt in pores and creases cause abrasions on the surface and lead to premature embrittlement of the leather surface. Therefore, they must be removed **regularly at short intervals** with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean soiled leather surfaces with a water-dampened cotton or woollen cloth and then dry with a clean, dry cloth » .

Clean **severely soiled areas** with a cloth soaked in a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons of neutral soap to 1 litre of water).

To **remove stains**, use a cleaning agent specially designed for this purpose.

Treat the leather periodically with a suitable leather protector and use a skin care cream with light blocker and impregnation after each cleaning.

CAUTION

- Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams. Otherwise, the leather could become brittle or cracked.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to avoid the leather from bleaching. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from direct sunlight by covering it.
- The use of an additional mechanical steering wheel lock may damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.
- Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts etc may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface or damage these. Such damage cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.

Note

During the use of the vehicle, minor visible changes can occur on the leather parts of the covers (e. g wrinkles or creases as a result of the stress of the covers).

Artificial leather, materials and Alcantara®

Read and observe and on page 187 first.

Artificial leather

Clean artificial leather with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the artificial leather, use a mild soap solution or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Fabric
Clean upholstery cover materials and cloth trims on doors, luggage compartment cover, etc. using specific cleaning agents, e.g., dry foam.

Use a soft sponge, brush, or commercially available microfibre cloth.

Use a cloth and a cleaning agent specifically designed for this purpose to clean the roof trim.

Remove any lumps on the cover fabric and any fabric residue using a brush.

Remove stubborn hair using a "cleaning glove".

Alcantara®
Dust and dirt in pores, creases and seams may chafe and damage the surface. Therefore, they must be removed **regularly at short intervals** with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Minor changes in colour caused by use are normal.

CAUTION
- For Alcantara® seat covers, do not use any solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover, leather cleaners or similar agents.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle in bright sunlight for long periods of time in order to stop the artificial leather, materials or Alcantara® from bleaching. During extended periods of standing outdoors, protect artificial leather, fabrics or Alcantara® by covering.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Seat covers

Read and observe and on page 187 first.

Electrically heated seats
Use a specific cleaning agent such as dry foam or similar to clean the covers. » .

Seats without seat heating
Thoroughly vacuum the seat covers with a vacuum cleaner before cleaning.

Clean the seat covers with a damp cloth or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Indented points arising on the fabrics by everyday use, can be removed by brushing against the direction of hair with a damp brush.

Always clean all parts of the covers, so that there are no visible edges. Then allow the seat to dry completely.

CAUTION
- Do not clean the covers of electrically heated seats either with water or with other liquids - there is a risk of damaging the seat heating system.
- Regularly remove dust from the seat covers using a vacuum cleaner.
- Electrically heated seats must not be dried after cleaning by switching on the heater.
- Do not sit on wet seats - risk of seat deformation.
- Always clean the seats from "seam to seam".

Safety belts

Read and observe and on page 187 first.

Wash dirty seat belts with mild soapy water.

Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush.

WARNING
- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- The seat belts must not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (e.g. acids).
- The seat belts must be fully dried before being rolled up.

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Petrol and diesel refuelling ____ 189
Lead-free petrol ____ 190
Diesel fuel ____ 191
Refuelling with CNG (compressed natural gas) ____ 192
CNG ____ 193

The correct fuels for your vehicle are specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 199 *on page 189*.

WARNING

- The operating instructions of the refuelling system must always be followed.
- Do not smoke when refuelling and do not use a mobile phone.
- The fuel and fuel vapours are explosive - risk to life!

CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage.
- If the vehicle was not purchased in the country where it was intended to be operated, you should check whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in the country where the vehicle will be operated. You should also perhaps check whether the manufacturer has recommended a different fuel for operation of the vehicle in the corresponding country. If no prescribed fuel is available, then you must check whether it is permitted by the manufacturer to operate the vehicle with another fuel type.

Petrol and diesel refuelling

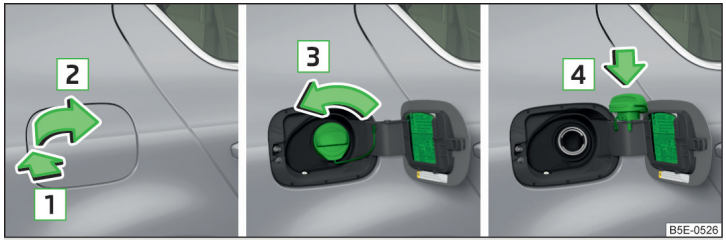


Fig. 199 **Open fuel filler flap/unscrew tank cap/place the tank cap on the fuel filler flap**

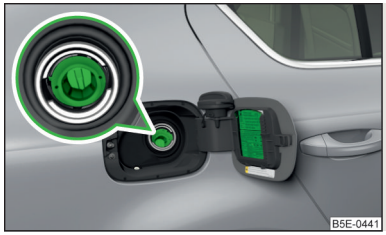


Fig. 200
Fuel filler tube on vehicles with diesel engines

Read and observe ! and ! on page 189 first.

Refuelling can be done if the following conditions are met.

✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
✓ The engine and the ignition are switched off.
✓ The auxiliary heating and ventilation is switched off » page 118.

› Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 199.
› Open the flap in the direction of arrow 2.
› Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the tank cap and place in the recess on top of the fuel filler flap in the direction of arrow 4.
› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler neck as far as it will go, and refuel.

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time » !.

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler tube and put it back in the pump.
› Place the filler cap onto the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to arrow 3 until it securely engages.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Check that the fuel filler flap is closed properly.

Incorrect refuelling guard on vehicles with diesel engines
The fuel filler tube on vehicles with diesel engines has been fitted with a incorrect refuelling guard » Fig. 200. This guard means it is only possible to refuel with the diesel pump nozzle.

If the diesel pump nozzle does not sit directly in the fuel filler tube, move it to and fro with slight pressure to insert it correctly.

WARNING

Instructions for filling the reserve canister
- Never fill the reserve can inside the vehicle.
- Never place the reserve can on the vehicle.
- Always place the reserve can on the floor.
- We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. in the event of an accident this can get damaged and fuel may escape – risk of fire!

CAUTION

- The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Not continue refuelling.
- Be careful when filling diesel fuel from the spare canister and then do this slowly and cautiously – danger of contaminating the body.
- The diameter of the diesel pump nozzle can be identical to that of the petrol pump nozzle in some countries. When driving in these countries, the incorrect fuelling protection should be removed by a specialist company.

Note

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **50 litres**, including a reserve of approx. **6 litres**.

Lead-free petrol

The correct fuel grades for your vehicle are specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

Read and observe ! and ! on page 189 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol** that meets the **EN 228**[1] standard.

All petrol engines can be operated using petrol that contains at **most** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

Unleaded petrol 95/91 or 92 or 93 RON/ROZ
We recommend using unleaded fuel with an octane rating of **95** RON. Unleaded petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92** or **93** RON can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption.

Unleaded petrol min. 95 RON / ROZ
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON or higher.

In an **emergency** petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92** and/or **93** RON can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption. Continue driving at medium engine speeds and minimum engine load » !.

Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.

Unleaded petrol 98/(95) RON / ROZ
We recommend using unleaded fuel with an octane rating of **98** RON or higher. Unleaded petrol **95** RON can also be used but this results in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption.

In an **emergency** petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92** and/or **93** RON can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption. Continue driving at medium engine speeds and minimum engine load » !.

Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.

[1] In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.

Fuel additives
Unleaded petrol in accordance with the EN 228 standard[1] meets all the conditions for a smooth-running engine. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

CAUTION
- Even one filling of the tank with petrol that does not meet the standards can lead to serious damage to parts of the exhaust system!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is put in the tank by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition. Extensive damage to engine parts can occur.

CAUTION
- If petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed is used do not drive with a high engine speed. A high engine load can severely damage engine components.
- Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91** RON must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged.

CAUTION
In no case may fuel additives with metal components be used, especially not with manganese or iron content. There is a risk of causing severe damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system.

CAUTION
Do not use fuels with metal components, such as LRP (lead replacement petrol)**. There is a risk of causing severe damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system.**

Note
- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- The use of petrol with an octane rating higher than **95** RON in does not result in either a noticeable increase in power nor lower fuel consumption in vehicles for which unleaded petrol **95/min 92 or 93** RON is specified.
- On vehicles using prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

Diesel fuel

The correct fuel grades for your vehicle are specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

Read and observe and on page 189 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel** that meets the **EN 590**[2] standard.

All diesel engines can be operated using diesel fuel with at **most** 7% biodiesel **(B7)**[3].

On the **Indian** market, your vehicle will only be able to run on **diesel fuel** compliant with standard **IS 1460/Bharat IV**. If diesel fuel which complies with this standard is not available, you can refuel with diesel fuel according to standard **IS 1460/Bharat III** in case of emergency.

Operation in winter – Winter-grade diesel fuel
In the cold season, only use "winter-grade diesel fuel" which will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20 °C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. The ŠKODA Partners and filling stations in the relevant country will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

[1] In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.
[2] In Germany also DIN 51628, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in Russia GOST R 52368-2005 / EN 590:2004.
[3] In Germany according to the DIN 52638 standard, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590.

Preheating fuel
The vehicle is fitted with a fuel filter preheating system. This secures operation of a vehicle using diesel fuel down to an environmental temperature of -24 °C.

Diesel fuel additives
The diesel fuel in accordance with the prescribed standards meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. We therefore recommend that no diesel fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

CAUTION
- Just filling the tank once with diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard, can cause severe damage to parts of the engine, the fuel and exhaust system.
- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is used, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur.
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.

CAUTION
- The vehicle cannot be operated with bio fuel **RME**, therefore this fuel must not be filled in the tank and used for driving the vehicle. The use of biofuel **RME** can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or fuel system.
- Do not mix any fuel additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar agents) into the diesel. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

Refuelling with CNG (compressed natural gas)

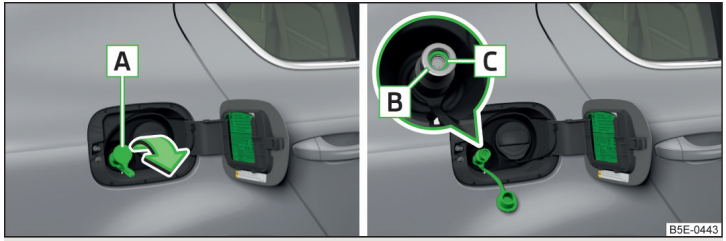


Fig. 201 **Natural gas filler tubes**

Read and observe and on page 189 first.

Natural gas refuelling can be carried out if the following conditions are met.
✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
✓ The engine and the ignition are switched off.
✓ The auxiliary heating and ventilation is switched off » page 118.

The gas filler tube for refuelling with natural gas is located behind the fuel filler flap next to the petrol filler tube.

The filling couplings of the natural gas refuelling systems may differ in handling. When refuelling with natural gas at unfamiliar refuelling systems, you should seek help from trained fuel station staff. If unsure, have the refuelling done by trained fuel station staff.

Open fuel filler flap
› Open the fuel filler flap.
› Remove cap A » Fig. 201 from gas filler tube B in direction of the arrow.
› Plug the filling coupling of the refuelling system on the gas filler tube B.

The fuel tank is full when the compressor of the refuelling system automatically switches off. To stop the refuelling operation prematurely, press the "Stop " button of the refuelling system.

Closing the filler cap
› Check that sealing ring C » Fig. 201 has remained inserted in the gas filler tube.

If sealing ring C has slipped onto the filling coupling, reinsert it into the gas filler tube.

› Plug the cap A onto the gas filler tube.
› Close the bonnet.

The natural gas refuelling systems have an overfill protection relating to the outdoor temperature. At very high outside temperatures, it may happen that the gas tank may not be fully refuelled.

The natural gas system of your vehicle is suitable both for "slow fuelling" (fuelling from small compressors) and for "quick fuelling" (fuelling from natural gas stations with large compressors).

If the vehicle is parked for a longer period of time immediately after refuelling, the situation may arise in which the pointer of the fuel tank gauge does not indicate exactly the same level as was the case immediately after refuelling

when the engine is restarted. This is not due to any system leakages but a drop in pressure in the natural gas fuel tank due to technical reasons after a cooling phase directly after refuelling.

The maximum lifetime of the gas tank is 20 years.

The capacity of the natural gas fuel tank is approximately **15 kg.**

The capacity of the gasoline fuel tank is about **50 litres,** of which about **6 lighters** are in reserve.

WARNING

- When refuelling, never get into the vehicle. If you have to get into your vehicle in exceptional cases, touch a metal surface before you touch the filling coupling again. This will avoid electrostatic discharges, which may generate sparks. Sparks can cause a fire during refuelling.
- Natural gas is highly explosive and highly flammable.

Note

During the filling process sounds are heard which are harmless. If you are unsure which service station staff to use, ask the petrol station staff.

CNG

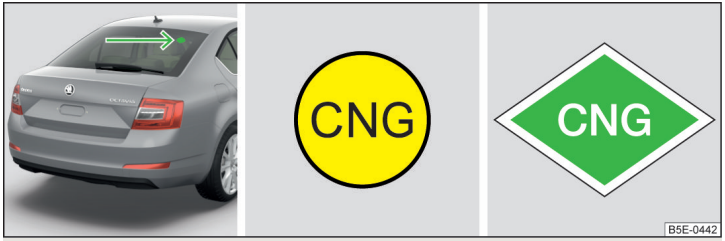


Fig. 202 **Position of the CNG label(s).**

Read and observe and on page 189 first.

A G-TEC-vehicle may be operated with CNG and petrol.

In some countries, national legislation requires that vehicles with CNG operation be identified by one of the labels » Fig. 202.

Position of the CNG label » Fig. 202.

Natural gas quality and consumption

Depending on the natural gas supplier, the natural gas quality (heating value) may vary. The engine system adjusts automatically to the natural gas quality.

Automatically switching over from natural gas mode to petrol mode

The vehicle automatically switches from natural gas to petrol, for example, if one of the following cases occurs.

- With an empty gas tank or not enough pressure in the tank.
- After refuelling with natural gas.
- At very low surrounding temperatures.

Use all the petrol in the fuel tank at lease once every six months until the warning light illuminates and then refill with petrol. This is to ensure that the fuel system functions correctly and to preserve the quality of the fuel.

Gas leak

If a gas leak is suspected (noticeable odour), proceed as follows.

- Stop the vehicle.
- Switch off the ignition.
- Put out any cigarettes, remove any spark-producing or incendiary items from the vehicle and immediately switch the engine off.
- Open the doors and the boot lid to ventilate the vehicle sufficiently.
- Do not continue to drive if the odour persists.
- If it is not possible to leave an enclosed area with a vehicle with a gas leak (e.g. in a tunnel, underpass, garage, ferry, etc.), call the emergency services immediately.

Seek help from a specialist garage to correct the gas system fault.

In a traffic accident

If a gas leak is suspected in a traffic accident, proceed as follows.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Put out any cigarettes, remove any spark-producing or incendiary items from the vehicle and immediately switch the engine off.
- Have all the occupants get out.
- Prevent people walking past/standing in the immediate vicinity of the accident vehicle. We recommend standing at least 10 metres from the vehicle.
- Inform the emergency services that it is a natural gas vehicle.

Regular gas system checks

Regular gas system checks must be carried out in a specialist workshop on natural gas-powered vehicles. The vehicle owner is responsible for ensuring tests are conducted properly.

Every 2 years
▸ Check the filler cap.
▸ Check the condition of fuel filler tubes and the sealing ring in the fuel filler tubes, and clean the sealing ring if necessary.
▸ Check the gas system for leaks.

Every 4 years
▸ Inspect the gas tank.

Every 20 years
▸ Replace the gas tank.

WARNING
- Do not underestimate the smell of gas in the car or when refuelling - risk of fire, explosion and injury.
- The natural gas tanks in the vehicle must not be exposed to unwanted heat sources.

Engine compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening and closing the bonnet 195
Engine compartment overview 196
Radiator fan 196
Windscreen washer system 196

WARNING
When working in the engine compartment, injuries, scolding, accident or fire hazards may arise. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions stated below and with the general applicable rules of safety. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

WARNING
Instructions before beginning work in the engine compartment
- Turn off the engine and remove the ignition key.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- For vehicles with manual transmission the lever into the neutral position.

WARNING (Continued)
- On vehicles with automatic transmission, shift the selector lever into the **P** position.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant flowing out of the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.

WARNING
Information for working in the engine compartment
- Keep all people, especially children, away from the engine compartment.
- Never touch the radiator fan. The fan might suddenly start running!
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!

WARNING
Information for working in the engine compartment with the engine running
- Pay particular attention to moving engine parts, e.g. V-ribbed belt, generator, radiator fan - danger to life!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, particularly on the vehicle's battery.
- Always make sure that no jewellery, loose clothing or long hair can get caught in rotating engine parts – risk of death! Always remove any jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight fitting clothing before completing any work.

WARNING
Information for working on the fuel system or the electrical system
- Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the electrical system.
- Do not smoke.
- Never work near open flames.
- Always have a functioning fire extinguisher nearby.

WARNING
- Read the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.
- Keep the working fluids in sealed original containers and safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children.

WARNING (Continued)

- Never spill operating fluids over the hot engine - risk of fire.
- If you wish to work under the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks: the car jack is not sufficient for this – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Always top up using the correct specification of fluids. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage!

For the sake of the environment

In view of the requirements for the environmentally friendly disposal of fluids and the special tools and knowledge required for such work, we recommend that fluids be changed by a specialist garage.

Note

- Please consult a specialist garage for any questions relating to fluids.
- Fluids with the proper specifications can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories or from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts ranges.

Opening and closing the bonnet

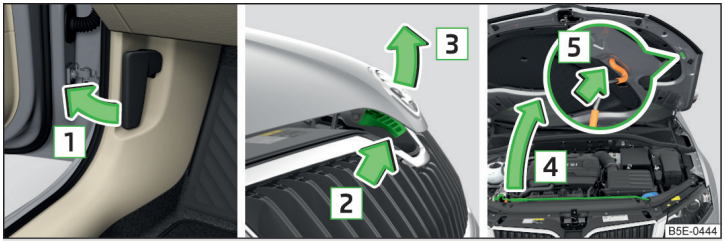


Fig. 203 **Open the bonnet**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 194 first.

Open flap

› Open the front door.
› Pull the release lever underneath the dash panel in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 203.

Before opening the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen, otherwise the paintwork on the flap could be damaged.

› Push the release lever in the direction of arrow 2.

The bonnet is then unlocked.

› Grasp the bonnet catch and lift in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the lid prop in the direction of arrow 4 from the holder.
› Secure the open flap inserting the end of the post into the opening in the direction of arrow 5.

Close the flap

› Lift the bonnet.
› Decouple the bonnet support and press into the holder designed to hold it.
› Let the bonnet drop into the lock carrier lock from a height of around 20 cm – do **not push it in!**

WARNING

- Check whether the bonnet has been closed properly. Also make sure that a vehicle with an opened bonnet does not appear in the instrument cluster display » page 40.
- If you notice that the lock is not properly engaged while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the bonnet – risk of accident!
- Make sure that when closing the bonnet, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

Engine compartment overview

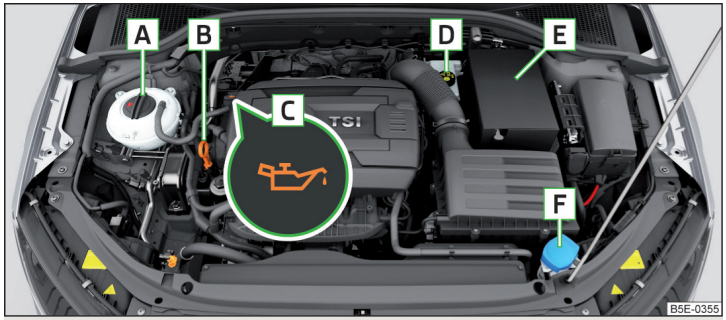


Fig. 204 **Principle sketch: Engine compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 194 first.

Layout of the engine compartment » Fig. 204

A	Coolant expansion reservoir	199
B	Engine oil dipstick	198
C	Engine oil filler opening	198
D	Brake fluid reservoir	200
E	Battery (below a cover)	201
F	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	196

Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical.

Radiator fan

Read and observe ! and ! on page 194 first.

The radiator fan is powered by an electric motor. Operation is controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

WARNING

After switching off the ignition, the fan can intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Windscreen washer system

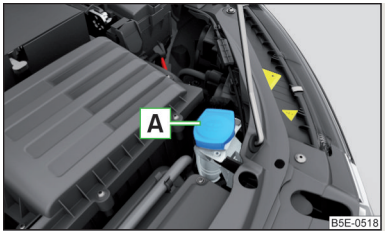


Fig. 205
Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 194 first.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir A is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 205.

The cleaning fluid is provided for the cleaning of the front and rear window as well as the headlight.

The capacity of the reservoir is about 3 litres or about 4.7 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system[1].

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend using clean washing water together with the screen cleaner from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories **(in winter additionally with antifreeze)** which is capable of removing stubborn dirt.

In Winter, the washing water should always be mixed with antifreeze even if the vehicle has heated windscreen washer nozzles.

Under exceptional circumstances, methylated spirits can also be used if no screen cleaner with antifreeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. The freeze protection at this concentration is sufficient only to -5 °C.

[1] In some countries, 4.7 ltr. applies for both variants.

CAUTION

- Under no circumstances must radiator antifreeze or other additives be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, only cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights must be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when replenishing it with liquid otherwise the liquid transportation system can be contaminated, which can cause the windscreen washer system to malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Specification 197
Checking the oil level 198
Replenishing 198

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be use throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

The engine oils are undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

ŠKODA Service Partners are informed about the latest changes by the manufacturer. We therefore recommend that the oil change be completed by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

The engine oil should be changed after specified service intervals » page 49.

WARNING

The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 194.

CAUTION

Do not pour any additives into the engine oil – risk of serious damage to the engine parts.

Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- If your skin has come into contact with oil, it must be washed thoroughly.

Specification

Read and observe ! and ! on page 197 first.

Vehicles with variable service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.2 l/63, 81 kW TSI	VW 504 00
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	
2.0 l/162, 169 kW TSI	

Diesel engines[a)]	Specification
1.6 l/66, 81 kW TDI	VW 507 00
2.0 l/105, 110, 135 kW TDI	

a) Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines without a **DPF**.

Vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.2 l/63, 81 kW TSI	VW 502 00
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	
1.6 l./81 kW MPI	
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	
2.0 l/162, 169 kW TSI	

Diesel engines[a)]	Specification
1.6 l/66, 81 kW TDI	VW 507 00
2.0 l/105, 110, 135 kW TDI	

a) Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines without a **DPF**.

CAUTION

- In an emergency, another engine oil to be refilled. To prevent damage to the engine, a **maximum of 0.5 litres** only of the following engine oils may be used:
  - For petrol engine models: ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN, (API SM);
  - For diesel engine models: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

Checking the oil level

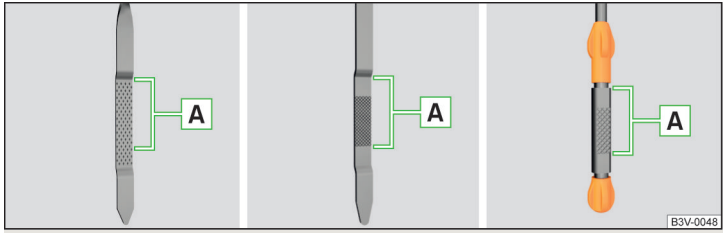


Fig. 206 **Principle sketch: Dipstick**

Read and observe and on page 197 first.

The dipstick indicates the engine oil level .

Dipstick » Fig. 206

A The oil level must be within this range.

The oil can be checked and topped up, if the following conditions are satisfied.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine operating temperature is reached.
✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The bonnet is open.

Checking the level

› Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil trough.
› Pull out the dipstick.
› Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again to the stop.
› Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.
› Re-insert the dipstick.

The engine consumes a little oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/1000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 km.

The oil level must be checked at regular intervals.

In case of low oil level, the instrument cluster display shows a warning light as well as the relevant notification » page 38. Check the oil level using the dipstick as soon as possible. Add oil accordingly.

CAUTION

- The oil level must never be above the range A » Fig. 206 - risk of damage to the motor as well as the exhaust system.
- If for some reason it is not possible to top up the engine oil under the current circumstances, do not continue driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If the oil level is above level A, do not continue to drive! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Replenishing

Read and observe and on page 197 first.

› Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening » Fig. 204 *on page 196*.
› Replenish the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » page 197.
› Check the oil level » page 198.
› Screw the lid of the engine oil filler closed carefully.
› Pull the dipstick out as far as the stop.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Checking the coolant level 199
Replenishing 200

The coolant provides cooling for the motor.

It consists of water and coolant additive with additives that protect the cooling system against corrosion and prevents furring.

The coolant additive percentage in the coolant must be at least 40%.

The coolant additive may be increased to a maximum of 60%.

The correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive is to be checked if necessary by a specialist garage or is to be restored if necessary.

The description of the coolant is shown in the coolant expansion reservoir » Fig. 207 *on page 199*.

WARNING

The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 194.

- The coolant is harmful to health.
- Avoid contact with the coolant.
- Coolant vapours are harmful to health.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized!
- When opening the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir, cover it with a cloth to protect your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
- If any coolant splashes into your eyes, immediately rinse out your eyes with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
- Always keep the coolant in the original container, safe from people who are not completely independent, especially children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- If coolant is swallowed, consult a doctor immediately.
- Never spill operating fluids over the hot engine - risk of fire.

CAUTION

- If for some reason it is not possible to top up the coolant under the current circumstances, STOP do not continue driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If the expansion tank is empty, do not top up with coolant. The system could aerate - risk of engine damage, STOP do not continue driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- The amount of coolant additive in the coolant must never be allowed to be less than 40 %.
- Over 60 % of coolant additive in the coolant reduces the antifreeze protection and coolant effectiveness.
- A coolant additive that does not comply with the correct specification can significantly reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.
- Any faults resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and can consequently result in major engine damage.
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark A » Fig. 207 *on page 199*.
- If an error occurs, leading to the engine overheating, the help of a professional garage is to be sought - there is a risk of serious engine damage occurring.
- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Note

On vehicles that are fitted with an auxiliary heater (auxiliary heating and ventilation), the coolant capacity is approx. 1 l larger.

Checking the coolant level

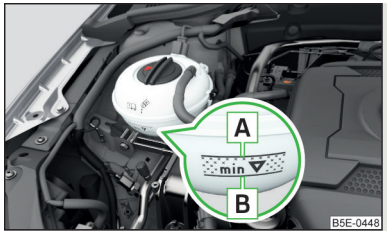


Fig. 207
Coolant expansion reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 199 first.

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment.

Coolant expansion reservoir » Fig. 207

A Mark for **the maximum** permissible coolant level

B Mark for the **lowest** permissible coolant level

The coolant level should be kept between the marks A and B.

The coolant can be checked and topped up, if the following conditions are satisfied.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.

✓ The engine is turned off.

✓ The engine is not heated.

✓ The bonnet is open.

Checking the level

› Check the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank » Fig. 207.

If the engine is warm, the test result may be inaccurate. The level can also be above the mark A » Fig. 207.

In the event of an insufficient coolant level, a warning light is displayed in the instrument cluster, as well as the relevant notification » page 37. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Loss of coolant

A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the cooling system. Do not merely top up the coolant. Have the cooling system checked by a specialist garage.

Replenishing

Read and observe and on page 199 first.

The coolant expansion tank must always contain a small amount of coolant » page 199, in section *Introduction*.

› Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion reservoir and unscrew the cap **carefully**.
› Replenish the coolant.
› Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

Do not use an alternative additive if the specified coolant is not available. In this case, use just water and have the correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive restored by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Only refill with new coolant.

Brake fluid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Checking the brake fluid level _____ 200
Specification _____ 201

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 208 *on page 200*.

WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 194.
- Do not use used brake fluid - the function of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Do not continue your journey if the fluid level has dropped below the "MIN" marking » Fig. 208 *on page 200*, do not continue driving - there is a risk of an accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

Note

- The brake fluid is changed as part of a prescribed inspection services.
- We recommend using brake fluids from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range.

Checking the brake fluid level



Fig. 208
Brake fluid reservoir

Read and observe and on page 200 first.

The fluid can be checked if the following conditions are met.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The bonnet is open.

Checking the level

› Check the level of brake fluid in the reservoir » Fig. 208.

The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results when driving due to normal wear-and-tear and automatic adjustment of the brake pads.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking.

Too low brake fluid level is indicated by the warning light being shown on the display of the instrument cluster as well as the corresponding message » page 32.

Specification

Read and observe and on page 200 first.

To ensure the optimal functioning of the braking system, only use a brake fluid meeting the standard **VW 501 14** (this standard meets the requirements of FMVSS 116 DOT4).

Note

We recommend using brake fluids from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening the cover 202
Checking the battery electrolyte level 202
Charging 203
Replacing 203
Disconnecting and reconnecting 203
Automatic load deactivation 204

The vehicle battery represents a power source for the motor to start and for the supply of electrical consumers in the car.

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection!
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection!
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery!
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced!
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery!

WARNING

There is a risk of injuries, poisoning, chemical burns, explosions or fire when carrying out any work on the battery and on the electrical system. The general applicable safety rules and the following warnings must be observed without exception.

- Keep the vehicle battery away from people who are not completely independent, especially children.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings.
- Protect your eyes by safety glasses or a face shield – risk of blindness!
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care.
- Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs.
- Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and creates deep wounds after contact with the skin which take a long time to heal.
- If any battery electrolyte comes into contact with your eyes, rinse the relevant eye immediately with clear water for several minutes - consult a doctor immediately!
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water.
- If you swallow battery acid, seek immediate medical assistance!

WARNING

- The use of open flames and light should be avoided.
- Smoking and radio triggering activities should be avoided.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery – risk of explosion!
- Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery – risk of explosion and caustic burns!
- Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns.

CAUTION

- Improper handling of the vehicle battery may cause damage.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – risk of damage to the paintwork.
- If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3 to 4 weeks, the battery will discharge. Prevent the battery from discharging by disconnecting the battery's negative terminal ⊖ or continuously charging the battery with a very low charging current.
- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the vehicle battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.
- If the vehicle is frequently used for making short trips, the vehicle battery will not have time to charge up sufficiently and may discharge.

Note

- We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.
- You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Opening the cover

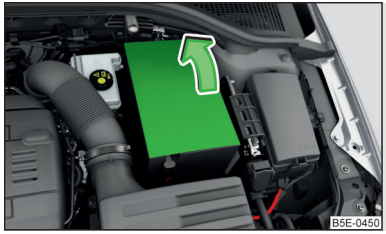


Fig. 209
Polyester cover of vehicle battery

Read and observe ! and ! on page 201 first.

The battery is located in the engine compartment. For some equipment variants, it is located underneath a polyester cover » Fig. 209.

› Fold out the cover on the battery in the direction of the arrow.

The battery cover is installed in reverse order.

Checking the battery electrolyte level

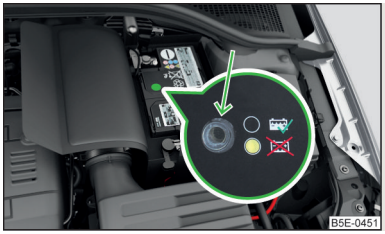


Fig. 210
Vehicle battery: Electrolyte level indicator

Read and observe ! and ! on page 201 first.

On vehicles with a vehicle battery fitted with a colour indicator, the electrolyte level can be determined by looking at the change in colour of this display.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.

Check
Black colour – electrolyte level is correct.

Colourless or light yellow colour – electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

For technical reasons, on vehicles with the description **"AGM"**, the electrolyte level cannot be checked.

Vehicles with the START STOP system are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for recurring engine starts.

We recommend that you have the acid level checked regularly by a specialist garage, especially in the following cases.
- ▸ High external temperatures.
- ▸ Longer day trips.
- ▸ After each charge.

Winter time
The vehicle battery only has a proportion of the starting power in lower temperatures. **A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C**.

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked and, if necessary, recharged by a specialist garage before the start of the winter.

Note
The battery acid level is also checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.

Charging

Read and observe and on page 201 first.

A properly charged vehicle battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

A charging operation can be performed if the following conditions are satisfied.

✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The ignition is switched off.
✓ All consumers are turned off.
✓ The bonnet is open.

"Fast charging" with high currents
› Disconnect both battery cables (first of all "negative", then "positive").
› Attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
› Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
› After charging has been successful: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
› Only then disconnect the charger's terminal clamps.
› Reconnect the cables to the battery (first of all "positive", then "negative").

Charging with low voltages
It is not necessary to disconnect the cables from the battery if you recharge the vehicle battery, for example from a mini-charger.

Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

The vent plugs of the vehicle battery should not be opened for charging.

WARNING
- When you charge a battery, hydrogen is released, and a highly explosive gas mixture is also produced. An explosion can be caused through sparkling over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- Creating a bridge between the poles on the battery (e.g. with metal objects - cables) creates a short circuit - risk of damage to the battery, explosion and burning of the battery, jets of acid spurting out.
- Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
- Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition and all electrical components and disconnect the negative terminal ⊖ .
- "Quick-charging" the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge.
- We therefore recommend that vehicle batteries be "rapidly charged" by a specialist garage.

CAUTION
On vehicles with the START/STOP system or additional heating (auxiliary heating), do not connect the pole terminal of the charger directly to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery, but rather only to the engine earth » page 219, *Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle*.

Replacing

Read and observe and on page 201 first.

The new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current and size as the original battery. Suitable vehicle battery types can be purchased from a specialist garage.

We recommend you have the battery replaced by a specialist garage.

Disconnecting and reconnecting

Read and observe and on page 201 first.

Disconnecting
› Switch off the ignition.

› Firstly disconnect the battery's negative terminal ⊖, followed by the positive terminal ⊕.

Connecting

› Firstly connect the battery's positive terminal ⊕, followed by the negative terminal ⊖.

After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, the following functions or devices are partially or completely inoperative.

Function / device	Operating measure
Electrical power windows	» page 64
Panorama sliding/tilting roof	» page 66
Sun screen	» page 66
Time settings	» page 31

CAUTION

- Disconnect the vehicle battery only with the ignition turned off - there is a risk of damaging the electrical system of the vehicle.
- Under no circumstances must the battery cables be connected incorrectly – risk of a cable fire.

Note

- After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist to ensure that the full functionality of all electrical systems is guaranteed.
- The data of the multi-function display will be reset.

Automatic load deactivation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 201 first.

The vehicle's electrical system automatically prevents the battery from discharging when the battery is being heavily used. This manifests itself by the following.

- The idling speed is raised to allow the generator to deliver more electricity to the electrical system.
- Where appropriate large convenience consumers, e.g. seat heaters, rear window heaters, have their power limited or in case of emergency shut off completely.

CAUTION

- Despite such intervention by the vehicle electric system management, the vehicle battery may be drained. For example, when the ignition is switched on a long time with the engine turned off or the side or parking lights are turned on during longer parking.
- Consumers which are supplied via a 12 V socket can cause the vehicle battery to discharge when the ignition is switched off.

Note

Driving comfort is not disrupted by any shutting off of consumers. Often the driver is not aware of it having taken place.

Wheels

Tyres and wheel rims

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Notes on using wheels 205
Tyre pressure 205
Tyre wear 206
Tyre wear indicator and wheel replacement 207
Tyre damage 207
Unidirectional tyres 207
Spare wheel 207
Spare wheel 208
Tyre label 208

Only use those tyres or wheel rims which have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle.

WARNING

For safety reasons, do no replace tyres individually.

Note

- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres be carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Notes on using wheels

Read and observe ! on page 205 first.

During the first 500 km, new tyres do not offer optimum grip and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving.

Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.

Tyre storage
Mark them previously used tyres so that you are able to fit them on again to run in the same direction.

Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

Tyre age
Tyres age losing their original characteristics, even if they are not used. The service life of the tyres is 6 years. Therefore, we recommend not using tyres that are more than 6 years old.

Wheel bolts
Wheels and wheel bolts are matched to each other in terms of design. We recommend that you use wheel rims and wheel bolts from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

WARNING

Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.

Tyre pressure

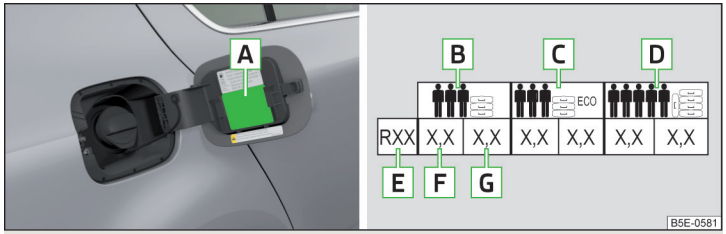


Fig. 211 **Label with a table of tyre sizes and tyre pressure value / inflate tyres**

Read and observe ! on page 205 first.

The prescribed tyre inflation is on the sticker with pictograms A » Fig. 211 (for some countries, the pictograms are replaced with a text).

Tyre pressure is always to match the load.

B Inflation pressure for half load

C Inflation pressure for environmentally-friendly operation
As a result of pressure level adaption to this value, the fuel consumption and pollutant emissions may fall slightly.

D Inflation pressure for full load

E Tyre diameter in inches
These details are intended only as information for the specified tyre pressure and does not list approved tyre sizes for your vehicle.
The approved tyre sizes for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's technical documentation (COC document) and this also states the declaration of conformity.
The approved tyre diameter for your vehicle is also provided with the vehicle data » page 236.

F Tyre pressure value on the front axle

G Tyre pressure value on the rear axle

Checking the tyre pressures
Check the tyre pressure, including that of the emergency or spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure on warm tyres.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values must be saved each time the pressures are changed » page 165.

WARNING
- Having the correct tyre inflation pressure is always the driver's responsibility.
- Too low or too high inflation pressure impairs handling.
- If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre must perform a greater rolling resistance. At higher speeds the tyre will warm up as a result of this. This can result in tread separation and a tyre blow-out.
- In the event of very fast pressure loss, e.g. in the event of sudden tyre damage, an attempt should be made to bring the vehicle carefully to a stop without sudden steering movements and without any hard braking.

For the sake of the environment
Tyres which are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption.

Note
The declaration of conformity (COC document) can be obtained from a ŠKODA[1)] partner.

Tyre wear

Read and observe ! on page 205 first.

The tyre wear depends on the tyre pressure, the driving style and other conditions.

Attention to the following notes may affect tyre wear.

Driving style
Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking increase the wear of your tyres.

Wheel balance
The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. When driving, there are a wide range of influences which may result in an imbalance. This may become apparent by a "vibration" in the steering. If this is the case, have the wheels checked by a specialist garage.

Have the wheels rebalanced after replacing or repairing the tyres.

Setting the vehicle geometry
Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear leads to excess wear on the tyres and impairs driving safety. In the event of prominent tyre wear, we recommend that you have the setting of the vehicle geometry checked at a specialist garage.

WARNING
- An incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear impairs handling.
- Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. If there is any doubt that a wheel is damaged, immediately reduce your speed and stop! If no external tyre damage is evident, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist garage to have the vehicle checked.

[1)] Only valid for some countries and some models.

Tyre wear indicator and wheel replacement

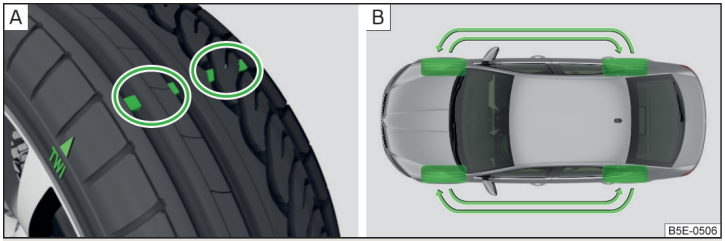


Fig. 212 **Principle sketch: Replace tire tread with wear indicators / wheels**

Read and observe ! on page 205 first.

Wear indicators
There is a 1.6-mm-high wear indicator » Fig. 212 - A in the base of the tread of the tyres. In some countries, different tyre wear rates may apply.

Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

Replacing the wheels
For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you replace the wheels every 10,000 km as shown in the diagram » Fig. 212- B. You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

After changing the wheel, the tyre pressure must be adjusted.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save tyre pressure values » page 165.

! WARNING

- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down.
- Worn tyres do not provide the necessary adhesion to the road surface particularly at high speeds on wet roads. One could experience "aquaplaning" (uncontrolled movements of the vehicle – "swimming" on a wet road surface).

Tyre damage

Read and observe ! on page 205 first.

We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis.

Remove any foreign objects in the tyre tread immediately (e.g. small stones).

Foreign bodies which **have penetrated into the tyre** (e.g. screws or nails) should not be removed and seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING

Never drive with damaged tyres – risk of accident.

! CAUTION

The tyres must be protected from contact with substances such as oil, grease and fuel, which could damage them. If the tyres come into contact with these substances, then we recommend having them checked out in a specialist garage.

Unidirectional tyres

Read and observe ! on page 205 first.

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The indicated direction of rotation must be adhered to in order to obtain the best benefits from the characteristics of these tyres.

These characteristics are mainly.
- Increased driving stability.
- Reduced risk of aquaplaning.
- Reduced tyre noise and reduced tyre wear.

Spare wheel

Read and observe ! on page 205 first.

The size of the spare wheel is identical to that of the vehicle factory installed wheels.

After changing the spare wheel, the tyre pressure must be adjusted.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save tyre pressure values » page 165.

WARNING

- If, you get a puncture and a spare tyre has to be mounted with opposite direction of rotation, then drive carefully. The tyre no longer retains its optimal characteristics in this situation.
- If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted.
- Never use the temporary spare wheel if it is damaged.

Spare wheel

Read and observe ! on page 205 first.

A yellow warning label **is** always **displayed** on the rim of the temporary spare wheel.

Please note the following if you intend to use the temporary spare wheel.
- The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
- Be specially attentive when driving.
- The emergency spare is inflated to the maximum inflation pressure for the vehicle » page 205.
- The tyre inflation pressure of the spare wheel R 18 is 4.2 bar.
- Only use this emergency spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage, as it is not intended for permanent use.

If you need to use a spare wheel, make sure to fit a standard wheel of the appropriate dimensions and design as soon as possible.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save tyre pressure values » page 165.

WARNING

- Never drive with more than one temporary spare wheel mounted!
- Only use the temporary spare wheel when absolutely necessary.
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- The snow chains cannot be used on the temporary spare wheel.
- If the dimensions or design of the temporary spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted, never drive faster than 80 km/h (or 50 mph).

WARNING (Continued)

- Never use the emergency spare wheel if it is damaged.
- Observe instructions on the warning sign of the emergency wheel.

Tyre label

Read and observe ! on page 205 first.

Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle on all 4 wheels.

When fitting new tyres, the tyres must be replaced axle by axle.

Explanation of tyre markings
For example, **195/65 R 15 91 T** means:

195	Tyre width in mm
65	Height/width ratio in %
R	Code letter for the type of tyre – **R**adial
15	Diameter of wheel in inches
91	Load index
T	Speed symbol

The **date of manufacture** is stated on the tyre wall (possibly on the **inside**).

For example, **DOT ... 10 15...** means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 10th week of 2015.

Load index
The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

Load index	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95
Load (In kg)	560	580	600	615	630	650	670	690

Speed symbol
The maximum speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible vehicle speed with fitted tyres in each category.

Speed symbol	S	T	U	H	V	W	Y
Maximum speed (in km/h)	180	190	200	210	240	270	300

WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** of mounted tyres.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible **speed** for the mounted tyres.

Winter operation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Winter tyres 209
Snow chains 209

Do not use alloy rims with bevelled or polished surfaces during the winter. The rim surface does not have sufficient corrosion protection and could be permanently damaged (e.g. through grit).

Winter tyres

The handling of your vehicle will be significantly improved when driving on wintry roads if you fit winter tyres (labelled **M+S**).

To ensure the best possible handling, winter tyres must be fitted to all four wheels. The minimum tread depth is 4 mm.

Fit the summer tyres on again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C.

Speed symbol

Winter tyres (marked with **M+S** and a peak/snowflake symbol) of a lower speed category can be used provided that the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

On vehicles with the infotainment system with key **CAR**the speed limit can be set for winter tyres » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - Adjust vehicle systems*.

For other vehicles, there is the possibility to set the speed limit for winter tyres at a specialist garage.

Snow chains

When driving on wintry roads, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

It is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Octavia

Rim size	Impression depth D	Tyre size
6J x 15[a)]	43 mm	195/65 R15
6J x 15[a)]	47 mm	195/65 R15
6J x 16[b)]	48 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 16[b)]	50 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 17[b)]	45 mm	205/50 R17
6J x 17[b)]	48 mm	205/50 R17

a) Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 13 mm.
b) Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 12 mm.

Octavia Scout

Rim size	Impression depth D	Tyre size
6J x 16[a)]	50 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 17[a)]	45 mm	205/50 R17
6J x 16[a)]	48 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 16[b)]	48 mm	205/60 R16
6J x 17[a)]	48 mm	205/50 R17
6J x 17[b)]	48 mm	205/55 R17

a) Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 12 mm.
b) Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 9 mm.

Octavia RS

Rim size	Impression depth D	Tyre size
6J x 17[a)]	45 mm	205/50 R17
6J x 17[a)]	48 mm	205/50 R17

[a)] Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 12 mm.

Remove the full wheel trims before fitting the snow chains » page 213.

! CAUTION

The chains must be removed when driving on snow-free roads. They would otherwise cause loss of performance and damage the tyres.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment, and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

First aid kit and warning triangle ____ 211
reflective vest ____ 211
Fire extinguisher ____ 212
Vehicle tool kit ____ 212

First aid kit and warning triangle

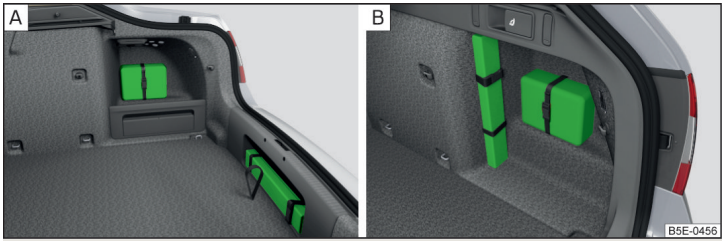


Fig. 213 **Placement of the first aid kit and warning triangle - version 1 / version 2**

The following information applies to the first-aid kit and warning triangle from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

The storage compartments may possibly be too small for a different first-aid kit or warning triangle.

First-aid box
The first aid kit can be attached by a strap in the right-hand storage compartment in the luggage compartment » Fig. 213.

Warning triangle – version 1
The warning triangle can be attached to the rear wall trim panel with rubber straps » Fig. 213 - A. Natural gas vehicles have the warning triangle located under the floor mat in the luggage compartment.

Warning triangle – version 2
The warning triangle can be secured with straps in the right storage compartment in the luggage compartment » Fig. 213 - B.

Pay attention to the expiration date of the first-aid kit.

WARNING
The first-aid kit and warning triangle must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note
We recommend using a first-aid box from ŠKODA Original Accessories available from a ŠKODA Partner.

reflective vest



Fig. 214 **Storage compartment for the reflective vest**

The reflective vest can be stored in brackets under the front seats » Fig. 214.

Fire extinguisher



Fig. 215
Fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a holder underneath the driver's seat.

Removing/attaching

› Loosen the two straps by pulling the buckles in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 215.
› Remove the fire extinguisher.
› To fit in place, insert the fire extinguisher back into the bracket and secure with straps.

Please read the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. If the fire extinguisher is used after the expiration date, its proper function is not assured.

WARNING

The fire extinguisher must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note

The fire extinguisher is part of the scope of delivery in certain countries only.

Vehicle tool kit

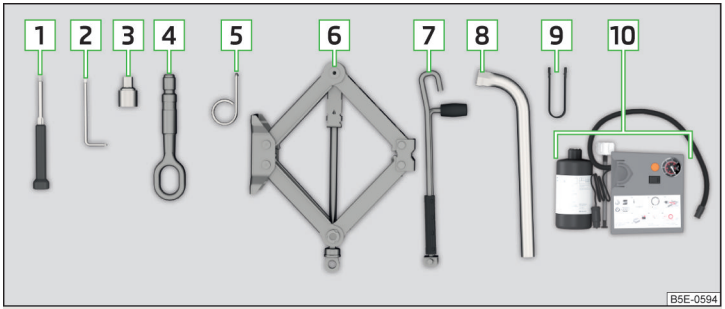


Fig. 216 **Vehicle tool kit**

The tool kit is housed in a box in the spare or emergency wheel compartment or in this storage space.

Depending on the equipment variant, the vehicle tool kit may not contain all of the following components.

1 Screwdriver
2 Key for removing and installing the tail light
3 Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
4 Towing eye
5 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
6 Jack with sign
7 Crank for the jack
8 Wheel wrench
9 Extraction pliers for wheel bolt caps
10 Breakdown kit

WARNING

The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift heavier vehicles or other loads.

CAUTION

- Screw the jack back into the starting position before storing in the box with the vehicle tool kit.
- Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely secured in the luggage compartment.
- Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap.

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the jack or the log folder.

Changing a wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Preparation 213
Removing/stowing the wheel 213
Full wheel trim 213
Wheel bolts 214
Anti-theft wheel bolts 214
Loosening/tightening wheel bolts 215
Raising the vehicle 215
Remove the wheel / fix 216
Follow-up tasks 216

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, the following instructions must be observed before carrying out a wheel change on the road.

✓ Switch on the hazard warning light.
✓ Place the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
✓ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from flowing traffic.
✓ Choose a location with a flat, solid surface.
✓ Have **all the occupants get out.** The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.

Preparation

Before changing the wheel, the following work must be carried out.

› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission** select 1st **gear**.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› The parking brake switch.
› Uncouple any trailers.

Removing/stowing the wheel

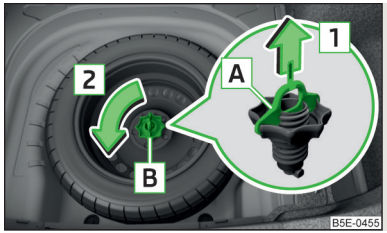


Fig. 217
Take out the wheel

The wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with special bolt B » Fig. 217.

Take out the wheel

› Open the boot lid.
› Raise the floor covering in the boot » page 103.
› Loosen the retaining belt and take out the box with the tool kit.
› Remove locking A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 217.
› Unscrew nut B in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wheel.

Store wheel away

› Place the wheel into the wheel well with the wheel rim pointing downward.
› Pull the fixing band through the opposite holes in the wheel rim.
› Screw in nut B in the opposite direction to arrow 2 » Fig. 217.
› Insert locking A in the opposite direction to which arrow 1 is pointing.
› Replace the box with the tool kit into the emergency or spare wheel and secure it with the tape.
› Fold back the floor covering in the boot » page 107.
› Shut the boot lid.

Full wheel trim

Before removing the wheel bolts, remove the full wheel trim.

Extracting

› Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit » page 212 into the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.
› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.
› Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

Notes on wheel trims supplied at the factory or from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories.

- When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, make sure that this has been fitted according to the position marked on the back of the wheel cover position.
- On the back of the wheel cover, the position for the anti-theft wheel bolt is marked by means of a symbol. If the wheel cover is set outside the position marked for the anti-theft wheel bolt, there is a risk of damaging the wheel cover.

If wheel trims are fitted, an adequate flow of air must be assured in order to cool the brake system.

CAUTION

Use the pressure of your hand only, do not strike the full wheel trim. The cover could be damaged.

Note

We recommend that you use hub caps from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheel bolts



Fig. 218
Remove the cap

Before removing the wheel bolts, remove the caps.

Extracting

› Push the extraction pliers » page 212 sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the pliers are positioned at the collar of the cap.
› Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 218.

Fitting

› Push the cap onto the wheel bolt up to the stop.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

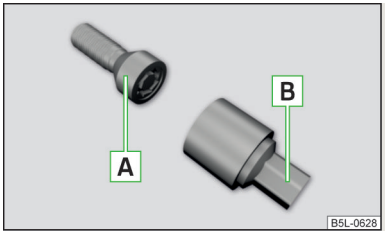


Fig. 219
Principle sketch: Anti-theft wheel bolt with adapter

The anti-theft wheel bolts protect the wheels from theft. These can only be loosened or tightened with the use of adapter B » Fig. 219.

› Remove the full wheel trim or the caps of the wheel bolts.
› Insert adapter B » Fig. 219 with the toothed side all the way into the inner teeth in the head of the anti-theft wheel bolts A.
› Push the wheel wrench onto the adapter B up to the stop.
› Loosen or tighten the wheel bolt » page 215.
› Remove the adapter.
› Replace the wheel trim and the caps.

The adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolts must always be kept in the vehicle in preparation for a possible wheel change. The adapter is stowed in the tool kit.

With wheel trims supplied at the factory or from ŠKODA Original Accessories, the position of the anti-theft wheel bolt is marked on the back of the wheel trim.

When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, make sure that this has been fitted according to the position marked on the back of the wheel cover position.

Note

- Note down the code number located on both the adapter and also on the end of each anti-theft wheel bolt. This number can be used to purchase a replacement adapter from ŠKODA Genuine Parts if required.
- The anti-theft wheel bolt set and adapter can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts



Fig. 220
Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

Before removing the wheel bolts, remove the wheel bolt caps.

Release

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop.

Use the appropriate adapter for undoing the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 214.

› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt about **one** turn in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 220.

Tightening

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop.

Use the appropriate adapter for tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 214.

› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 220, until it is tight.

After tightening the wheel bolts, replace the caps.

WARNING

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing.

Raising the vehicle

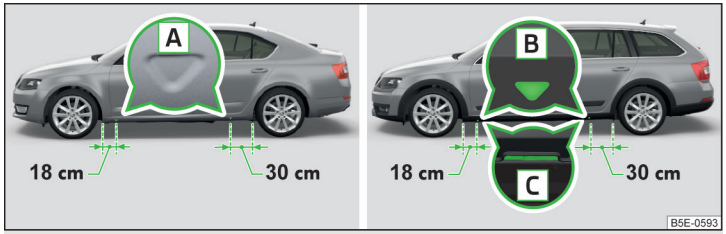


Fig. 221 **Jacking points for the jack Version 1 / version 2**

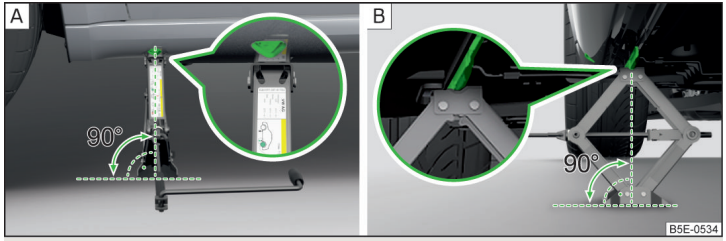


Fig. 222 **Schematic diagram: Positioning the jack**

The jack from the vehicle tool kit must be used in order to raise the vehicle.

Position the car jack at the jacking point closest to the flat tyre .

Jacking points - version 1
The jacking points are located on the metal bar of the lower beam.

Their positions are indicated by embossed markings A » Fig. 221 in the side of the lower beam.

Jacking points - version 2
The mounting points are located on the metal bar of the lower beam in the recess at the bottom of the plastic lower-beam casing B » Fig. 221.

Their positions are indicated by embossed markings B in the side of the lower beam.

Raising the vehicle

› Insert the crank 7 into the mount on the jack 6 » page 212.
› Support the base plate of the jack with its entire surface resting on level ground and ensure that the lever is positioned vertically to the jacking point » Fig. 222.
› Use the crank to raise the jack until its claw encloses the bar » Fig. 222.
› Continue to raise the jack until the wheel is just lifted off the ground.

WARNING

▪ If the wheel has to be changed on a slope, first of all block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object to prevent the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
▪ Secure the base plate of the lifting jack with suitable means to prevent possible moving. A soft and slippery ground under the base plate may move the lifting jack, causing the vehicle to fall down. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the surface is smooth, such as cobbled stones, tiled floor, etc.
▪ Only attach the lifting jack to the attachment points provided for this purpose.
▪ Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
▪ Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
▪ When the vehicle is raised, never start the engine.

CAUTION

It is important to ensure that the jack is correctly attached to the bar of the lower beam, as otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle.

Remove the wheel / fix

When changing a wheel, the following instructions must be followed.

› Remove the full wheel trim or the caps of the wheel bolts.
› First of all slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt and then the other wheel bolts.
› Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground.
› Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
› Remove the wheel carefully.
› Attach the wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
› Lower the vehicle.
› Tighten the wheel bolts opposite each other using the wheel wrench (alternating crosswise). Tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt last.
› Replace the wheel trim and the caps.

When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 207.

All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.

If it is established when changing a wheel that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to move, then these must be replaced.

Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts!

WARNING

Undo the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) as long as the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could become loose and fall off.

Follow-up tasks

After changing the wheel, the following work must be carried out.

› Stow the replaced wheel in the wheel well and secure it with a special screw.
› Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the band.
› Check the tyre pressure on the installed wheel as soon as possible.
› Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

After changing the wheel, the tyre pressure must be adjusted. In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save tyre pressure values » page 165.

Replace the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts is **120 Nm**.

WARNING

▪ If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rim can come loose when the car is moving. A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.
▪ Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Puncture repair kit

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Components of the puncture repair kit 217
General information 218
Preparations for using the breakdown kit 218
Sealing and inflating the tyre 218
Notes for driving with a repaired tyre 219

Use the breakdown kit to reliably repair tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or a puncture with diameters up to approx. 4 mm.

Performing a repair with the breakdown kit **not at all intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

The wheel must not be removed during repair.

Do not remove foreign bodies, which have penetrated the wheel profile from the tyre (e.g. screws or nails).

Immediately replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

WARNING

- The sealant is hazardous to heath. Remove immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.
- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.

Note

A new bottle of sealant can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.

Components of the puncture repair kit

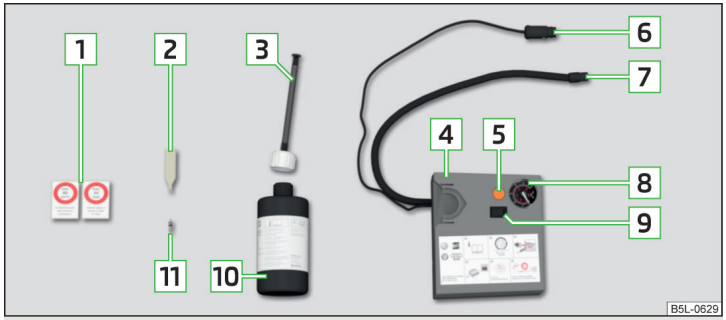


Fig. 223 **Principle sketch: Components of the breakdown kit**

Read and observe ! on page 217 first.

Kit components » Fig. 223

1 Sticker with speed designation "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph"
2 Valve remover
3 Inflation hose with plug
4 Air compressor
5 Button for releasing the tyre pressure
6 12 volt cable connector
7 Tyre inflation hose
8 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
9 ON and OFF switch
10 Tyre inflator bottle with sealing agent
11 Replacement valve core

The valve remover 2 has a slot at its lower end which fits into the valve core.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment. This contains a sealant and an air compressor.

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

General information

Read and observe ! on page 217 first.

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, the following instructions must be observed before carrying out a wheel repair on the road.

✓ Switch on the hazard warning light.
✓ Place the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
✓ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from flowing traffic.
✓ Choose a location with a flat, solid surface.
✓ Have **all the occupants get out.** The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.

The breakdown kit must not be used under the following circumstances.

- The rim is damaged.
- The outside temperature is below -20 ° C.
- The cut or puncture is larger than 4 mm.
- The tyre wall is damaged.
- The expiration date has passed (see inflation bottle).

Preparations for using the breakdown kit

Read and observe ! on page 217 first.

The following preparatory work must be carried out before using the puncture repair kit.

› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission** select 1st **gear**.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Check that you can carry out the repairs with the breakdown kit » page 217.
› Uncouple any trailers.
› Remove the breakdown kit from the boot.
› Stick the sticker 1 » Fig. 223 *on page 217* on the dashboard in the driver's field of view.
› Unscrew the valve cap.
› Use the valve remover 2 to unscrew the valve core and place it on a clean surface (rag, paper, etc.).

Sealing and inflating the tyre

Read and observe ! on page 217 first.

Sealing

› Forcefully shake the tyre inflater bottle 10 » Fig. 223 *on page 217* back and forth several times.
› Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflater bottle 10. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
› Remove the filler plug from the tyre valve.
› Screw the valve core back into the tyre valve using the valve remover 2.

Inflating

› Screw the air compressor tyre inflation hose 7 » Fig. 223 *on page 217* firmly onto the tyre valve.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission** the lever into the neutral position.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Start the engine and run it in idle.
› Plug the connector 6 into 12 volt socket » page 93.
› Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 9.
› Allow the air compressor to run until a pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved. Maximum run time of 8 minutes » !.
› Switch off the air compressor.
› If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 7 from the tyre valve.
› Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
› Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 7 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
› Switch off the air compressor.
› Remove the tyre inflation hose 7 from the tyre valve.

Once a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar is achieved, you can continue the journey.

WARNING

- If the tyre cannot be inflated to at least. 2.0 bar, the damage is too great. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. Do not drive the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.
- The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot as the tyre is being inflated – risk of burning.

CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 8 minutes at the latest – risk of overheating! Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Notes for driving with a repaired tyre

Read and observe ! on page 217 first.

The inflation pressure of the repaired tyre must be checked after driving for 10 minutes.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or less

› **Do not drive the vehicle!** You cannot properly seal with tyre with the breakdown kit.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or more

› Set the tyre pressure back to the correct value.
› Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

WARNING

- A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle _____ 219

The battery of another vehicle can be used to jump-start your vehicle if the engine will not start because the battery is flat.

WARNING

- Pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment » page 194.
- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not carry out a jump start with the battery of another vehicle – risk of explosion!
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, smouldering cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery – risk of explosion!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns.
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.

Note

We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist.

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

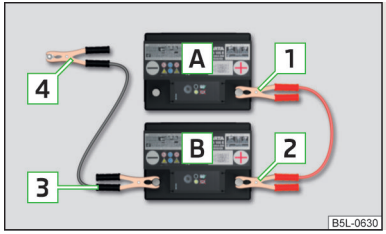


Fig. 224
Jump-starting: A – flat battery, B – battery providing current



Fig. 225
Engine earth: START-STOP system

Read and observe ! on page 219 first.

The starting process using the battery of another vehicle requires the use of jumper cables.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

› Attach clamp 1 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery A » Fig. 224 .
› Attach clamp 2 to the positive terminal of the battery supplying power B.
› Attach clamp 3 to the negative terminal of the battery supplying power B.
› Attach the clamp 4 to a solid metal part which is connected firmly to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

On vehicles with the START-STOP system» Fig. 225, connect the jump-start cable to the engine's earthing point.

Starting engine

› Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
› Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
› If the engine does not start, terminate the attempt to start the engine after 10 seconds and wait for 30 seconds before repeating the process.
› Remove the jump-start cables exactly in the **reverse** sequence as for attaching.

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

Jump-start cables

Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Observe the instructions of the jumper lead manufacturer.

Positive cable – colour coding in the majority of cases is red.

Negative cable – colour coding in the majority of cases is black.

! WARNING

- Do not clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out the battery being ignited by the strong spark which results from the engine being started.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – risk of short circuit!
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – risk of short circuit!
- Route the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

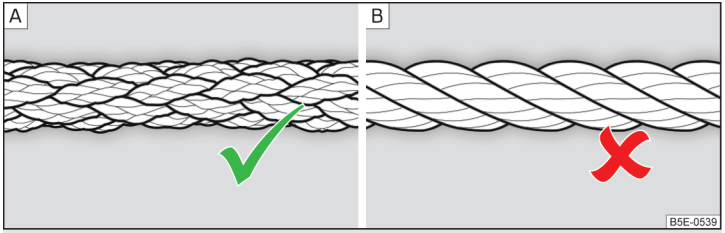


Fig. 226 **Braided tow ropes/spiral tow rope**

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front towing eye 221
Rear towing eye 222
Vehicles with a tow hitch 222

A braided tow rope must be used for towing » Fig. 226- A.

When towing, the following guidelines must be observed.

Vehicles with **manual transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised.

Vehicles with **automatic transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at rear, the automatic gearbox is damaged! If possible, the vehicle should be towed with the engine running or at least with the ignition on.

Driver of the tow vehicle

› Engage the clutch gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
› Only then approach correctly when the rope is taut.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

Driver of the towed vehicle

› Switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that the turn signal lights, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
› Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

Please note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. If the engine is not running, significantly more physical force is required to depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle.

If using a tow rope, ensure that it is always kept taught.

General information for the towing process

Both drivers should be familiar with the problems which might possibly occur while a vehicle is being towed. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow in another vehicle or to be towed in.

The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.

If the gearbox no longer contains any oil, your vehicle must only be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or on a breakdown vehicle or trailer.

To protect both vehicles when tow-starting or towing, the tow rope should be elastic. Thus one should only use plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material.

Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes** » page 221 or » page 222 to the **detachable ball head of the towing equipment** » page 167.

WARNING

- When towing, exercise increased caution.
- Spiral tow ropes must not be used for towing » Fig. 226- B, the towing eye may unscrew out of the vehicle - risk of accident.
- The tow rope should not be twisted - risk of accident.

CAUTION

- Do not start engine by towing - there is a risk of damaging the engine parts. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 219, *Jump-starting*.
- There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.

Note

We recommend using a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Front towing eye



Fig. 227 **Removing the cap / installing the towing eye**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 221 first.

Removing/installing the cap

› Press on the cap in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 227.
› Remove the cap in the direction of arrow 2.
› After unscrewing the towing eye, insert the cap in the area of arrow 1 and then press the opposite side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› Manually screw the towing eye as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 227 » !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow 3.

! WARNING

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Rear towing eye

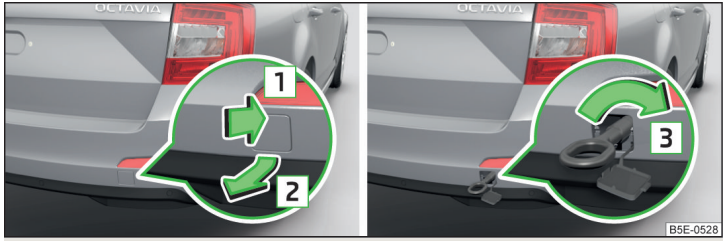


Fig. 228 **Expansion of the cap / installation of towing eye - Version 1**

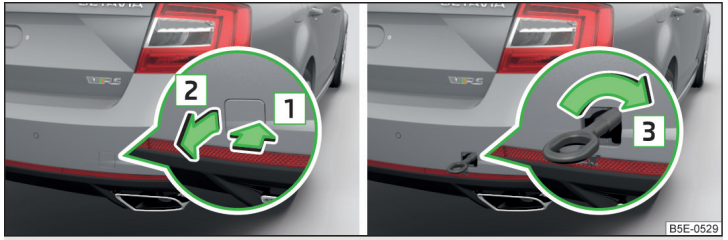


Fig. 229 **Expansion of the cap / installation of towing eye - Version 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 221 first.

Removing/installing the cap

› Press on the cap in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 228 or » Fig. 229.
› Remove the cap in the direction of arrow 2.
› After unscrewing the towing eye, insert the cap in the area of arrow 1.
› Press the opposite side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› Manually screw the towing eye in as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 228 or » Fig. 229 to the stop » !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow 3.

! WARNING

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing in or tow-starting.

Vehicles with a tow hitch

Read and observe ! and ! on page 221 first.

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, there is no mount for the screw-in towing eye behind the cap.

Use the built-in detachable ball rod for towing » page 167, *Hitch*.

Towing the vehicle using the towing device is a viable alternative solution to using the towing eye.

! CAUTION

The detachable ball rod and/or the vehicle can be damaged if an unsuitable tow bar is used.

i Note

The detachable ball rod must always be in the vehicle so that it can be used for towing, if necessary.

Remote control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the battery in the remote control key ____ 223
Synchronising the remote control ____ 223
replace battery in the remote control the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating) ____ 223

CAUTION

- We recommend having faulty rechargeable batteries replaced by a ŠKODA service partner.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the battery.

Note

If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Replacing the battery in the remote control key

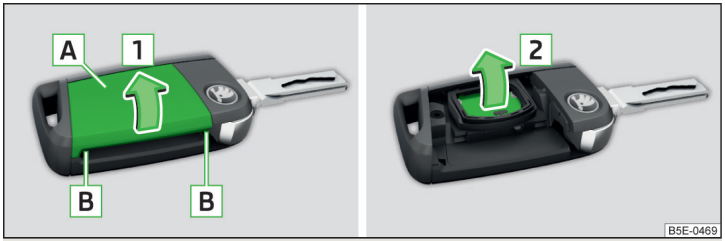


Fig. 230 **Remove cover/take out battery**

Read and observe ! on page 223 first.

The battery change is carried out as follows.

› Flip out the key.
› Press off the battery cover A » Fig. 230 with your thumb or by using a flat screwdriver in region B.
› Open the battery in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Remove the discharged battery in the direction of arrow 2.
› Insert the new battery.
› Insert the battery cover A and press it down until it clicks audibly into place.

Synchronising the remote control

Read and observe ! on page 223 first.

If the vehicle does not unlock when pressing the remote control, the key may not be synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the remote control key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery in the remote control key has been replaced.

Synchronise the key as follows.

› Press any button on the remote control key.
› Unlock the door with the key via the lock cylinder within 1 minute of pressing the button.

replace battery in the remote control the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating)

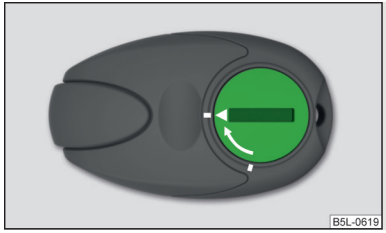


Fig. 231
Radio remote control: Battery cover

Read and observe ! on page 223 first.

The battery is located under a cover on the back of the radio remote control » Fig. 231.

› Insert a flat, blunt object, such as a coin, into the gap of the battery cover.
› Turn the cover against the direction of the arrow up to the mark to open the cover.
› Replace the battery.
› Return the battery cover.
› Turn the cover in the direction of the arrow up to the initial marking, engage.

Emergency unlocking/locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking the driver's door 224
Locking the door without a locking cylinder 224
Unlock the boot lid 224
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 225

Unlocking/locking the driver's door

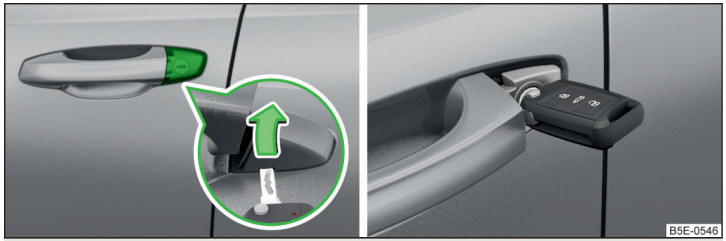


Fig. 232 **Handle on the driver's door: covered locking cylinder/locking cylinder with key**

The driver's door can be unlocked or locked in an emergency.

› Pull on the door handle and hold.
› Insert the vehicle key into the slot on the bottom of the cover » Fig. 232.
› Open the cover in the direction of the arrow.
› Release the door handle.
› For vehicles with **LHD**, insert the remote control key into the lock cylinder **with the buttons facing upwards** and unlock or lock the vehicle.
› For vehicles with **RHD**, insert the remote control key into the lock cylinder **with the buttons facing downwards** and unlock or lock the vehicle.
› Pull on the door handle and hold.
› Replace the cap in its original position.

CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking.

Locking the door without a locking cylinder

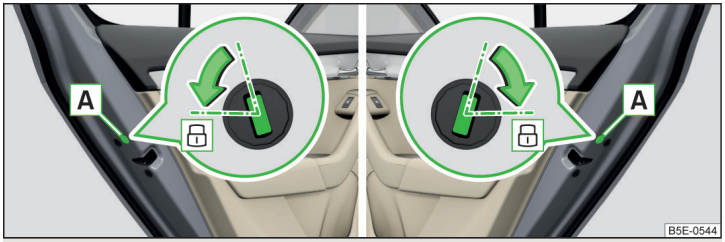


Fig. 233 **Emergency locking: Left/right rear door**

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the face side of the doors which have no locking cylinder, it is only visible after opening the door.

› Remove the panel A » Fig. 233.
› Insert the vehicle key into the slot and turn in the direction of the arrow (spring-loaded position).
› Replace the cover A.

Unlock the boot lid

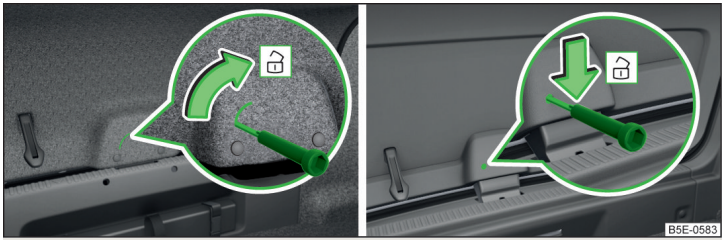


Fig. 234 **Unlocking the boot lid: Version 1 / version 2**

The boot lid can be unlocked manually.

› Fold the rear seat backrest forward » page 87.
› Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the recess or the opening in the trim » Fig. 234 as far as the stop.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

› Open the boot lid.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking



Fig. 235 **Selector lever-emergency unlocking**

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Open the stowage compartment in the front centre console » page 91.
› Grab hold of the cover A in the area of the arrows and carefully raise it forwards in the direction of the arrow 1 and then backwards » Fig. 235.
› Use a finger to press the yellow plastic part in the direction of the arrow 2.
› At the same time, press the locking button in the selector lever and move the selector lever to position **N**.

If the selector lever is moved again to position **P**, it is once again blocked.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades ____ 225
Replacing the rear window wiper blade ____ 226

WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades



Fig. 236 **Windscreen wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 225 first.

Before replacing the windscreen wiper blade, put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Service position for changing wiper blades

› Closing the bonnet.
› Switch the ignition on and off again.
› Within 10 seconds, press the lever in position 4 and hold it in position for around 2 seconds » page 78, *Windscreen wipers and washers*.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the service position.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of 1 » Fig. 236.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and press the securing mechanism A in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Push the windscreen wiper blade to the stop until it locks into place.
› Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.
› Turn on the ignition and press the lever into position 4 » page 78, *Windscreen wipers and washers*.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the home position.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade



Fig. 237 **Rear window wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 225 first.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of 1 » Fig. 237.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and press the securing mechanism A in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Push the windscreen wiper blade to the stop until it locks into place.
› Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fuses in the dash panel – LHD 227
Fuses in the dash panel – RHD 227
Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel 228
Fuses in the engine compartment 229
Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment 229

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

Switch off the ignition and the corresponding power consuming device before replacing a fuse.

Find out which fuse belongs to the component that is not operating » page 228, *Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel* or » page 229, *Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment*.

Electrically adjustable seats are protected by **automatic circuit breakers**, which switch on again automatically after a few seconds after the overload has been eliminated.

Colour coding of fuses

Fuse colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
dark brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow/blue	20
white	25
green/pink	30
orange/green	40
red	50

WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 194.

CAUTION

- "Never repair" fuses, and do not replace them with fuses of a higher amperage – risk of fire! This may also cause damage at other points in the electrical system.
- If a newly inserted fuse blows again after a short time, have the electrical system checked as quickly as possible by a specialist garage.
- A blown fuses is recognisable by the molten metal strip. Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.

Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle. A box of replacement fuses and bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- There can be several power consuming devices for one fuse.
- Multiple fuses may exist for a single power consuming device.

Fuses in the dash panel – LHD

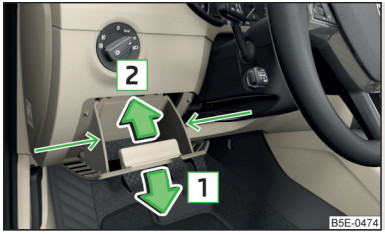


Fig. 238
Storage compartment on the driver's side: LHD

Read and observe and on page 227 first.

On left-hand drive vehicles, the fuse box is located behind the storage compartment in the left-hand section of the dash panel.

Replacing fuses

› Open the storage compartment » page 90.
› Grab hold of the storage compartment in the area of the arrows » Fig. 238.
› Fold out the storage compartment by pulling in the direction of arrow 1.
› Remove the plastic clip under the cover of the fuse box in the engine room » Fig. 242 *on page 229* .
› Place the clip onto the respective fuse and pull the fuse out.
› Insert a new fuse.
› Replace the bracket at the original position.
› Fold back the storage compartment by pressing into the secured position in the dash panel in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Close the storage compartment.

Fuses in the dash panel – RHD

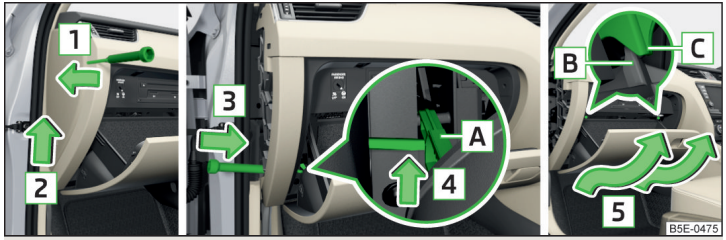


Fig. 239 **Storage compartment on the front passenger's side: RHD**

Read and observe and on page 227 first.

On right-hand drive vehicles, the fuse box is located on the front passenger's side behind the stowage compartment in the left-hand section of the dash panel.

Removing the storage compartment and replacing the fuse

› Insert a screwdriver under the side cover » Fig. 239.
› Unlock the cover in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Push the cover out in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Open the storage compartment.
› Insert a screwdriver from the side into the dash panel in the direction of arrow 3.
› Use the screwdriver to unlock the brake rod A of the storage compartment in the direction of arrow 4.
› Remove the storage compartment in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Remove the plastic clip under the cover of the fuse box in the engine room » Fig. 242 *on page 229* .
› Place the clip onto the respective fuse and pull the fuse out.

› Insert a new fuse.
› Replace the bracket at the original position.

Installing the storage compartment

› Move the stop buffer B of the storage compartment behind the brackets C » Fig. 239.
› Push in the storage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow 5.
› Insert the brake rod and lock it against the arrow 4 with a screwdriver.
› Push in the side cover against the direction of the arrow 2.
› Press the side cover fully against the direction of the arrow 1.
› Close the storage compartment.

Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel

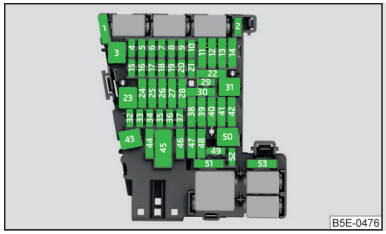


Fig. 240
Fuses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 227 first.

No.	Consumer
1	Not assigned
2	Not assigned
3	Not assigned
4	Not assigned
5	Databus
6	Alarm sensor
7	Air conditioning, heating, recipient of the wireless remote control for auxiliary heating, selector lever of the automatic transmission
8	Light switch, rain sensor, diagnostic socket
9	Haldex clutch
10	Touchscreen
11	Heated rear seats
12	Radio
13	Belt tensioner - driver's side
14	Air blower for air conditioning,heating
15	Electric steering lock
16	Signal amplifier for telephone, telephone preinstallation
17	Instrument cluster
18	Not assigned
19	KESSY
20	Operating lever underneath the steering wheel
21	Not assigned
22	Towing hitch - contact in the socket
23	Light - right
24	Panorama roof
25	Central locking front door - left, power windows - left
26	Heated front seats
27	Music amplifier
28	Towing hitch - left light
29	CNG relay
30	Not assigned
31	Headlight - left
32	Parking aid (Park Assist)
33	Airbag switch for hazard warning lights
34	TCS, ESC button, tyre control display, pressure sensor for air-conditioning, reverse light switch, interior mirror with automatic dimming, START-STOP button, telephone preinstallation, control for heating of rear seats, sensor for air-conditioning, 230 V power socket, sport-sound generator
35	Headlight, headlamp beam adjustment, diagnostic connector, camera, radar
36	Headlight right
37	Headlight left
38	Towing hitch - right light

No.	Consumer
39	Central locking front door - right, power windows - front and rear right
40	12-Volt power socket
41	Not assigned
42	Central locking rear door - left, right, headlight washer system, windscreen washer system
43	Visor for gas discharge bulbs, interior lighting
44	Towing hitch - contact in the socket
45	Operating the seat adjustment
46	230-Volt power socket
47	Rear window wiper
48	Not assigned
49	Coil on starter relay, clutch pedal switch
50	Opening the boot lid
51	Belt tensioner - front passenger side
52	Not assigned
53	Relay for rear window heater

Fuses in the engine compartment

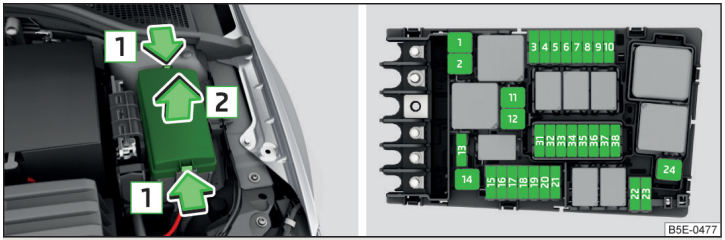


Fig. 241 **Removing the fuse box cover/fuses**



Fig. 242
Cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment: Plastic clip for fuses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 227 first.

Replacing fuses

› Press together the interlocks of the cover simultaneously in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 241.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Replace the appropriate fuse.
› Place the cover on top of the fusebox.
› Push in the interlocks on the cover and lock.

! CAUTION

The cover for the fuse box in the engine compartment must always be applied correctly. Water may get into the fuse box if the cover is not replaced properly - there is a risk of damage to the vehicle.

Assignment of fuses in the engine compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 227 first.

No.	Consumer
1	ESC, ABS
2	ESC, ABS
3	Engine control unit
4	Radiator fan, oil temperature sensor, air volume sensor, control valve for fuel pressure, relay for electrical auxiliary heating, engine components
5	Coil of the relay for the ignition system, coil of the CNG relay, engine components
6	Brake sensor
7	Coolant pump, radiator shutter, engine components

No.	Consumer
8	Lambda probe
9	Ignition, glow plug system, engine components
10	Fuel pump, ignition
11	Electrical auxiliary heating system
12	Electrical auxiliary heating system
13	Automatic gearbox
14	Windscreen heater - right
15	Horn
16	Ignition, fuel pump
17	ABS, ESC, motor control unit, relay coil for the heated windscreen
18	Databus, battery data module
19	Windscreen wipers
20	Alarm
21	Windscreen heater - left
22	Engine control unit
23	Starter
24	Electrical auxiliary heating system
31	Not assigned
32	Not assigned
33	Not assigned
34	Haldex clutch
35	Not assigned
36	Not assigned
37	Aux. heating
38	Not assigned

Bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Bulb arrangement in the headlights 231
Replacing the low beam bulb 231
Change bulb for long-distance, daytime running lights and parking light switch 232
Change bulb for additional parking light 232
Change bulb for fog light switch - Variant 1 232
Change bulb for fog light switch - Variant 2 233
Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light 233
Rear Light 234
Replacing bulbs in the rear light - Variant 1 235
Replacing bulbs in the rear light - Variant 2 235

Some manual skills are required to change a bulb. For this reason, we recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

- Switch off the ignition and the relevant lights before replacing a bulb.
- Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.

A stowage compartment for replacement bulbs is located in a plastic box in the spare wheel or underneath the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the low, high or fog beam.

In case of failure of a xenon gas discharge lamp or an LED diode, visit a specialist garage.

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 194.
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- Bulbs H7 H8 and H15 are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb - risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Do not carry out any work on the Xenon gas discharge lamps - risk of death!

CAUTION

Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.

Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories.

Bulb arrangement in the headlights

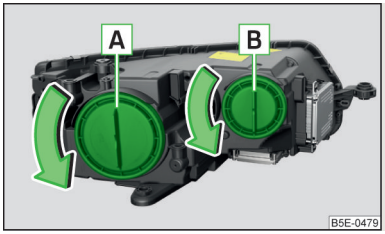


Fig. 243
Principle sketch: Headlights

Read and observe and on page 230 first.

The vehicle is equipped with headlights with halogen lamps or with a xenon discharge lamp and a halogen bulb.

Bulb arrangement » Fig. 243

A Low beam with halogen bulb or xenon gas discharge lamp

B Main beam, daytime running lights and parking lights/additional parking light

Replacing the low beam bulb

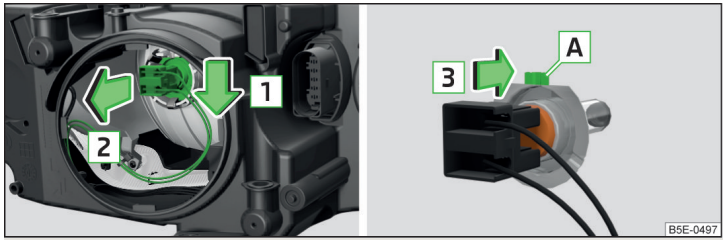


Fig. 244 **Headlight with halogen bulb: Bulb for low beam**

Read and observe and on page 230 first.

› Turn the protective cap A » Fig. 243 *on page 231* in direction of the arrow.
› Disconnect the connector with the light bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 244.
› Remove the connector to the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the connector.
› Insert the connector with the new bulb so that the fixing lug A » Fig. 244 fits the bulb into the recess on the reflector.
› Remove the hook in the direction of arrow 3.
› Insert the protective cap A » Fig. 243 *on page 231* and turn it opposite to the direction of the arrow.

Change bulb for long-distance, daytime running lights and parking light switch



Fig. 245
Bulbs for main beam, daytime running lights, and parking light

Read and observe ! and ! on page 230 first.

› Turn the protective cap B » Fig. 243 *on page 231* in direction of the arrow.
› Pull the holder until it stops in the arrow direction 1 » Fig. 245.
› Remove the holder in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Insert the bulb holder with the new bulb and turn opposite to arrow direction 1 as far as the stop.
› Insert the protective cap B » Fig. 243 *on page 231* and turn it in the direction opposite to the arrow.

Change bulb for additional parking light

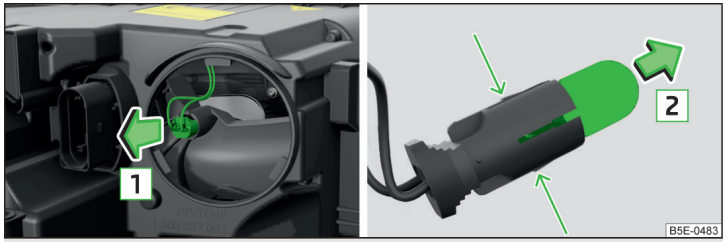


Fig. 246 **Headlights with Xenon light: Bulb for additional parking light**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 230 first.

› Turn the protective cap B » Fig. 243 *on page 231* in direction of the arrow.
› Remove the bulb holder with the bulb by jiggling it out in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 246.
› Grasp the lamp socket at the places marked by arrows.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Insert a new bulb in the bulb holder up to the stop.
› Replace the bulb holder in the headlamp with the bulb.
› Insert the protective cap B » Fig. 243 *on page 231* and turn it in the direction opposite to the arrow.

Change bulb for fog light switch - Variant 1

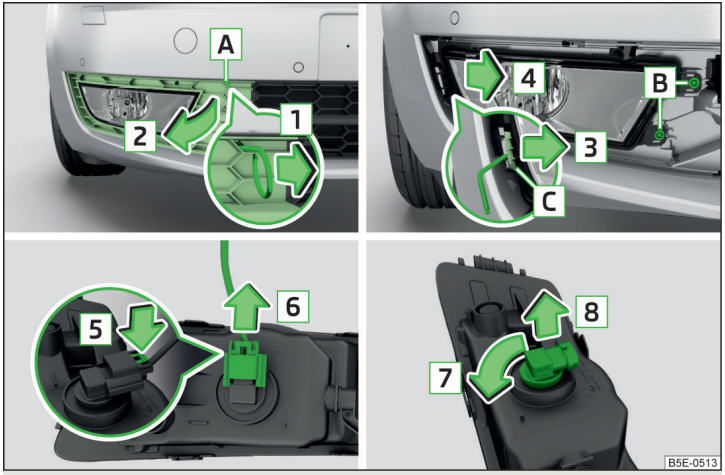


Fig. 247 **Remove the fog lamp / bulb change - Version 1**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 230 first.

Remove the protective grille and headlight

› Insert in opening A » Fig. 247 the clamps for removing the full wheel covers » page 212, *Vehicle tool kit*.
› Loosen the protective grille by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow 1.
› Remove the protective grille in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Unscrew the screws B with the screwdriver from the tool kit.
› With the key 2 » page 212, *Vehicle tool kit* unlock the locking C in direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 4.

Replacing the light bulb

› Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow 5.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 6.
› Pull the lamp holder until it stops in the arrow direction 7.
› Remove the lamp holder in the direction of the arrow 8.
› Insert the new bulb into the headlight and turn counter to the direction of arrow 7 as far as the stop.
› Fit the connector.

Refit the headlight and grille

› Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 4 » Fig. 247 and tighten.
› Insert the protective grille and carefully press it in.

The protective grille must engage firmly.

Change bulb for fog light switch - Variant 2

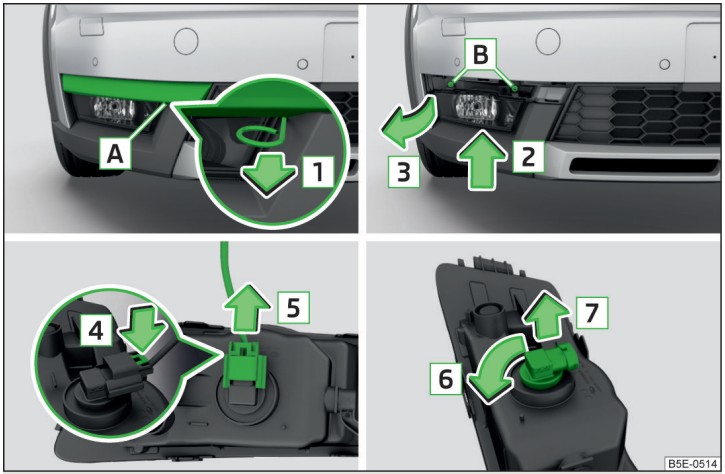


Fig. 248 **Remove the fog lamp / bulb change - Version 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 230 first.

Remove cover and headlight

› Insert in opening A » Fig. 248 the clamps for removing the full wheel covers » page 212, *Vehicle tool kit*.
› Remove the cover by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow 1.
› Unscrew the screws B with the screwdriver from the tool kit.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 3.

Replacing the light bulb

› Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow 4.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Pull the lamp holder until it stops in the arrow direction 6.
› Remove the lamp holder in the direction of the arrow 7.
› Insert the new bulb into the headlight and turn counter to the direction of arrow 6 as far as the stop.
› Fit the connector.

Refitting the headlight and grille

› Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 248 and tighten.
› Replace the cover and press in gently.

The cover must engage securely.

Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light

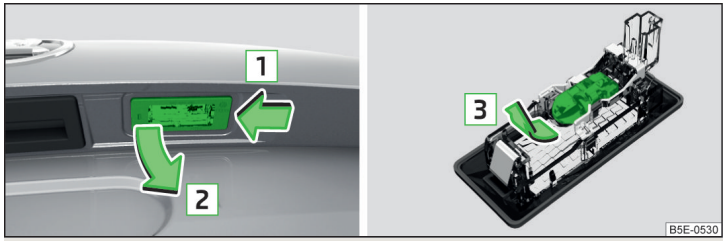


Fig. 249 **Remove the number plate light/replace the bulb**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 230 first.

› Open the boot lid.

› Push in the lamp in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 249.

The lamp comes loose.

› Swivel out the lamp in the direction of the arrow 2 and remove it.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder.
› Reinsert the lamp in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.
› Push on the light until the spring clicks into place.

Check that the light is securely inserted.

Rear Light

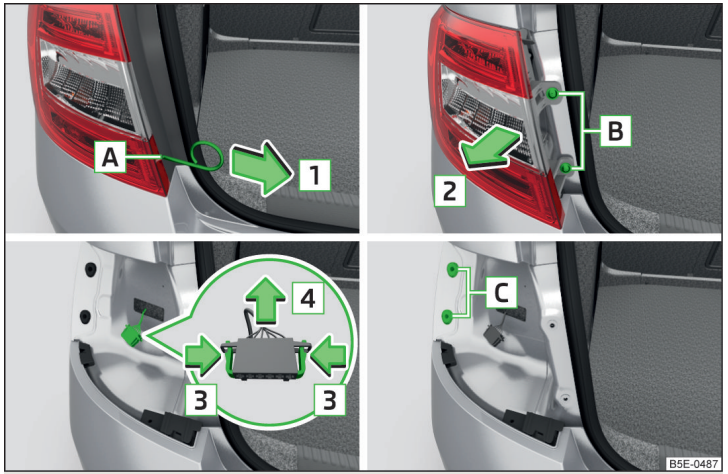


Fig. 250 **Remove light / pull out connector**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 230 first.

Removing

› Open the boot lid.

› Insert into opening A [1] » Fig. 250 the clamps for removing the full wheel covers » page 212, *Vehicle tool kit* .
› Remove the cover by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow 1.
› Unscrew the screws B with the key from the tool kit.
› Grasp the light and carefully remove with shaky movements in the direction of arrow 2.
› Press together the interlocks on the connector [2] in the direction of arrow 3.
› Carefully remove the connector from the tail lamp assembly in the direction of the arrow 4.

Fitting

› Insert the bulb holder in the light.

The locks on the plug must be inserted securely.

› Insert the lamp with the pin A » Fig. 251 *on page 235* into the recesses C » Fig. 250 in the body.
› Carefully push the cover in » !.
› Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover.

The cover must engage securely.

! CAUTION

- Ensure that the cable bundle does not become pinched between the body and the lamp when it is being refitted – risk of damage to the electrical installation and risk of water ingress.
- If you are not sure whether the cable bundle has become pinched, we recommend that you have the light connection checked by a specialist garage.
- Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the tail lamp.

[1] The position of the opening may vary depending on the vehicle model.
[2] The design of the plug can vary depending on the vehicle equipment.

Replacing bulbs in the rear light - Variant 1

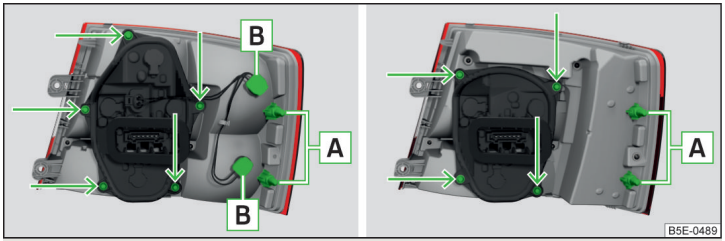


Fig. 251 **Outer part of the light: Basic light/light with LED diodes**

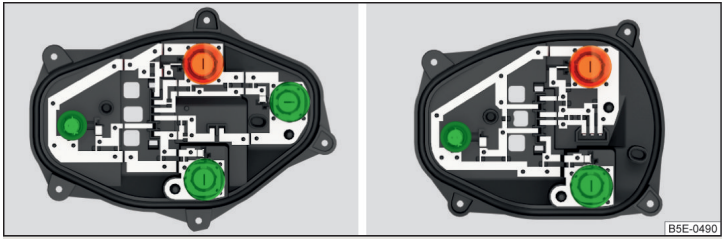


Fig. 252 **Inner part of the light: Basic light/light with LED diodes**

Read and observe and on page 230 first.

Outer part of the lamp

- Turn the bulb holder B » Fig. 251 in an **anti-clockwise** direction and remove it from the lamp housing.
- Push the faulty bulb into the holder, turn in **anti** -clockwise direction up to the stop and remove.
- Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
- Replace the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn **in** a clockwise direction to the stop.

Inner part of the light

- Unscrew the lamp holder » Fig. 251 with the screwdriver from the car tool kit, and remove the lamp holder from the light assembly.
- Turn the respective light bulb » Fig. 252 until it stops **counter-clockwise** and remove it from the bulb holder.
- Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
- Insert the bulb holder in the tail lamp assembly.
- Screw on the lamp holder carefully.

Replacing bulbs in the rear light - Variant 2

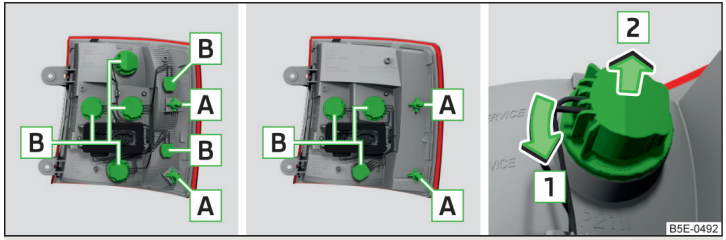


Fig. 253 **Outer part of the light: Basic light/light with LED diodes**

Read and observe and on page 230 first.

Outer part of the lamp

- Turn the socket with the bulb B in the direction of 1 » Fig. 253.
- Remove the socket with the bulb from the lamp housing in the direction of arrow 2.
- Push the faulty bulb into the holder, turn in **anti** -clockwise direction up to the stop and remove.
- Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
- Reinsert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow 1 to the stop.

Technical data

Technical data

Basic vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle characteristics 236
Operating weight 237
Payload 238
Measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives 239
Dimensions - Octavia 240
Dimensions - Octavia estate 241
Track gauge front/rear 242
Departure angle 243

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

The values given have been determined in accordance with regulations and in conditions prescribed by legal or technical provisions for determining the operating and technical data of vehicles.

The values listed are for the basic model without optional equipment.

Vehicle characteristics

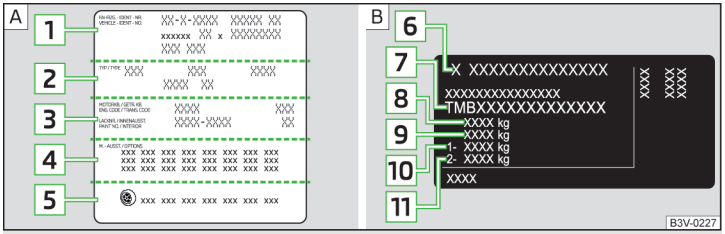


Fig. 254 **Vehicle data sticker/type plate**

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 254 - A is located on the base of the luggage compartment and is also fixed into the service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data.

1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2 Vehicle type
3 Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
4 Partial vehicle description
5 Approved tyre diameter in inches[1)]

The approved tyres and rim sizes for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's technical documentation (the so called COC document) and this also states the declaration of conformity.

Type plate

The type plate » Fig. 254 - B is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the right driver's side.

The type plate contains the following data.

6 Manufacturer
7 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
8 Maximum permissible gross weight
9 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)

[1)] Only valid for some countries.

10 Maximum permissible front axle load
11 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code), and on the type plate.

The VIN number can also be displayed in the Infotainment » *Owner´s Manual Infotainment*, chapter *CAR - vehicle settings*.

Engine number
The engine number (three-digit identifier and serial number) is stamped on the engine block.

Supplementary Information (applies to Russia)
The full type approval number of the means of transport is indicated in the registration documents, field 17.

Maximum permissible trailer weight
The listed maximum allowable trailer weight is only valid for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level.

The engine output falls as the height increases, as does the ability to climb. Therefore, for every additional 1000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10%.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

! WARNING
Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!

Operating weight

This value represents the minimum operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment such as air conditioning system, spare wheel, or trailer hitch.

The specified operating weight is for orientation purposes only.

The operating weight also contains the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

Operating weight - Octavia

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	MG	1225
1.2 l/81 kW TSI	MG	1230
	DSG	1255
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	MG	1394
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG (EU5)	1250
	MG (EU6)	1255
	DSG (EU4, EU5)	1265
	DSG (EU6)	1270
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	MG	1210
	AG	1250
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	MG (EU4, EU5)	1315
	MG (EU6)	1320
	DSG 4x4	1428
	DSG (EU4, EU5)	1330
	DSG (EU6)	1335
1.6 l/66 kW TDI CR	MG	1305
1.6 l/81 kW TDI CR	MG5	1305
	MG6	1280
	MG 4x4	1413
	DSG	1320
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	MG	1325
	DSG	1345
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG	1332
	MG 4x4	1438
	DSG	1352
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	1463

Operating weight - Octavia RS

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
2.0 l/162 kW TSI	MG	1420
	DSG	1440

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
2.0 l/169 kW TSI	MG	1445
	DSG	1465
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	MG	1445
	DSG	1465
	DSG 4x4	1550

Warning triangle – Octavia Combi

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	MG	1247
1.2 l/81 kW TSI	MG	1252
	DSG	1277
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	MG	1416
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG (EU5)	1272
	MG (EU6)	1277
	DSG (EU4, EU5)	1287
	DSG (EU6)	1292
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	MG	1232
	AG	1272
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	MG (EU4, EU5)	1337
	MG (EU6)	1342
	DSG 4x4	1450
	DSG (EU4, EU5)	1352
	DSG (EU6)	1357
1.6 l/66 kW TDI CR	MG	1327
1.6 l/81 kW TDI CR	MG5	1327
	MG6	1280
	MG 4x4	1435
	DSG	1342
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	MG	1347
	DSG	1367
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG	1354
	MG 4x4	1458
	DSG	1374
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	1485

Operating weight - Octavia Combi RS

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
2.0 l/162 kW TSI	MG	1442
	DSG	1462
2.0 l/169 kW TSI	MG	1467
	DSG	1487
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	MG	1467
	DSG	1487
	DSG 4x4	1572

Operating weight - Octavia Combi Scout

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	1522
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG 4x4	1526
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	1559

Note

If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.

Payload

It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following weights.

- The weight of the passengers.
- The weight of all items of luggage and other loads.
- The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system.
- The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
- The trailer drawbar load with trailer operation (max. 75 kg or 80 kg for vehicles with 4-wheel drive or 56 kg for G-TEC vehicles).

Measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions were not available at the time of going to press.

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions are given on the ŠKODA websites or in the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

i Note

- The fuel consumption and emission levels given on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation have been established in accordance with rules and under conditions that are set out by legal or technical rules for the determination of operational and technical data of motor vehicles.
- Depending on the extent of the equipment, the driving style, traffic conditions, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values can in practice result in fuel economy figures in the use of the vehicle that differ from the fuel consumption values listed on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation.

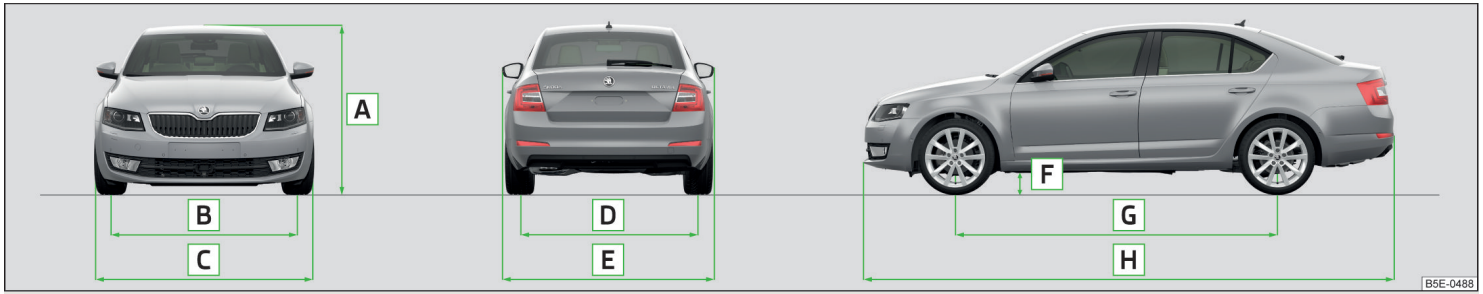


Fig. 255 **Vehicle dimensions**

Vehicle dimensions for operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 255	Specification		Octavia	Octavia 4x4	Octavia RS
A	Height	Basic dimensions	1461[a]/1458[b]	1460[a]/1459[b]	1449/1464[c]
		Vehicles with off-road package	1476[a]/1474[b]	1475[a]/1474[b]	-
		Vehicles with SPORT package	1446[a]/1444[b]	-	-
B	Front track » page 242				
C	Width		1814	1814	1814
D	Rear track » page 242				
E	Width including exterior mirror		2017	2017	2017
F	Clearance	Basic dimensions	140	138	128/142[c]
		Vehicles with off-road package	155	154	-
		Vehicles with SPORT package	125	-	-
G	Wheel base	Basic dimensions	2686	2680	2680
		Vehicles with 1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine	2680	-	-
		G-TEC vehicles	2680	-	-
H	Length		4659	4659	4685

[a] Valid for vehicles with 15" brakes
[b] Valid for vehicles with 16" brakes
[c] Only valid for some countries.

Dimensions - Octavia estate

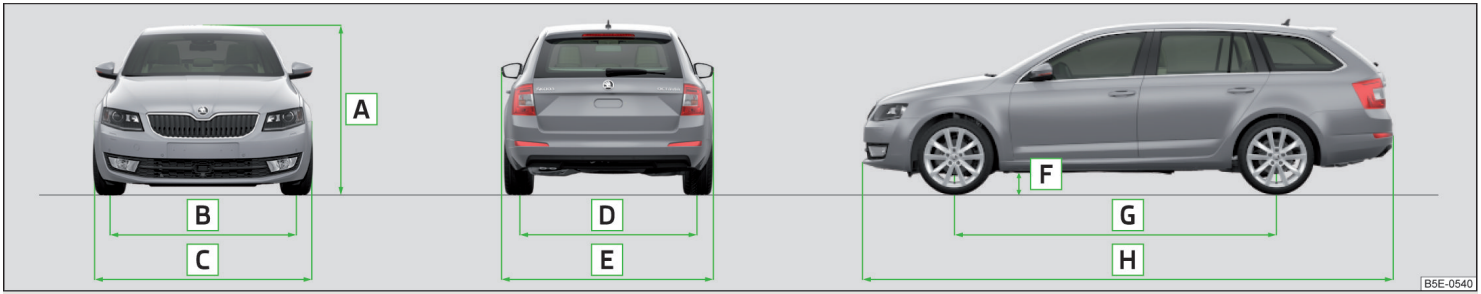


Fig. 256 **Vehicle dimensions**

Vehicle dimensions for operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 256	Specification		Octavia Estate	OCTAVIA Estate 4x4	OCTAVIA Estate RS	Octavia Combi Scout
A	Height	Basic dimensions	1465[a]/1463[b]	1465[a]/1463[b]	1452/1468[c]	1531
		Vehicles with off-road package	1480[a]/1478[b]	1480[a]/1478[b]	-	-
		Vehicles with SPORT package	1450[a]/1448[b]	-	-	-
B	Front track » page 242					
C	Width		1814	1814	1814	1814
D	Rear track » page 242					
E	Width including exterior mirror		2017	2017	2017	2017
F	Clearance	Basic dimensions	140	139	127/142[c]	171
		Vehicles with off-road package	155	154	-	
		Vehicles with SPORT package	125	-	-	-
G	Wheel base	Basic dimensions	2686	2680	2680	2679
		Vehicles with 1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine	2680	-	-	-
		G-TEC vehicles	2680	-	-	-
H	Length		4659	4659	4685	4685

[a] Valid for vehicles with 15" brakes
[b] Valid for vehicles with 16" brakes
[c] Only valid for some countries.

Track gauge front/rear

Engine	Front track	Rear track
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	1549	1520
1.2 l/81 kW TSI	1549	1520
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC	1543	1515
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	1543	1514
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	1549	1520
1.8 l/132 kW TSI	1543/1538[a)]	1512/1506[a)]
2.0 l/162 kW TSI	1535	1506
2.0 l/169 kW TSI	1535	1506
1.6 l/66 kW TDI CR	1549	1520
1.6 l/81 kW TDI CR	1549	1520/1518[b)]
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	1543	1514
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	1543/1538[a)]	1514/1506[a)]/1512[b)]
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	1535/1538[a)]/1543[b)]	1506/1512[b)]

[a)] Applies to Octavia Combi Scout vehicles.

[b)] Applies to Octavia 4x4/Octavia Combi 4x4 vehicles.

Departure angle

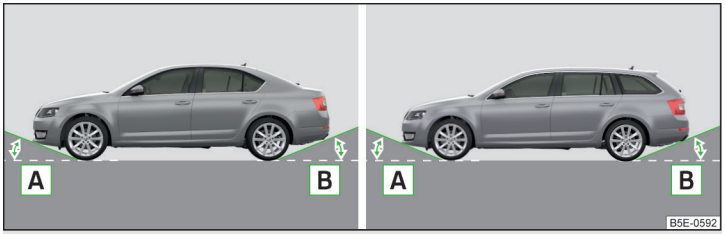


Fig. 257 **Departure angle: Octavia/Octavia Combi**

Angle » Fig. 257

A Overhang angle, front

B Overhang angle, rear

Overhang angle

The values shown indicate the maximum incline of an embankment, up which the vehicle can drive at a slow speed without collision of the bumper or underbody.

The values listed correspond to the maximum axle load, front or back.

Departure angle (°) - Octavia

» Fig. 257	Octavia		Octavia 4x4		Octavia RS	
	A	B	A	B	A	B
Basic dimension	14	12.3	14.1	12.4	14.1[a)]	12.8[a)]
Vehicles with off-road package	15.1	13	15.3	12.2	-	-
Vehicles with SPORT package	12.9	12.5	-	-	12.9	12.4

a) Only valid for some countries.

Departure angle (°) - Octavia Combi

» Fig. 257	Octavia Estate		OCTAVIA Estate 4x4		OCTAVIA Estate RS		Octavia Combi Scout	
	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B
Basic dimension	13.9	12.2	14.2	12.5	14.1[a)]	12.6[a)]	-	-
Vehicles with off-road package	14.9	13.2	15.3	12.4	-	-	16.7	13.8
Vehicles with SPORT package	12.8	12.4	-	-	12.8	12.3	-	-

a) Only valid for some countries.

Vehicle-specific information depending on engine type

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

1.2 ltr. / 63 kW TSI engine 244
1.2 ltr. / 81 kW TSI engine 244
1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC engine 245
1.4 ltr./110 kW TSI engine 245
1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine 245
1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine 246
2.0 l/162 kW TSI engine 246
2.0 ltr./169 kW TSI engine 246
1.6 ltr./66 kW TDI CR engine 247
1.6 ltr./81 kW TDI CR engine 247
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR engine 247
2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI CR engine 248
2.0 ltr./135 kW TDI CR engine 248

The specified values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

The emissions standard is detailed in the technical vehicle documentation as well as in the certificate of conformity (COC document), which can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner[a].

[a] Only valid for some countries and some models.

1.2 ltr. / 63 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	63/4300-5300	
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	160/1400-3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1197	
Body	**Octavia**	**Octavia Estate**
Transmission	**MG**	**MG**
Top speed (km/h)	181	178
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12	12.2

1.2 ltr. / 81 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	81/4600-5600			
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	175/1400-4000			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1197			
Body	**Octavia**		**Octavia Estate**	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	199	199	196	196
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.1	10.2	10.3	10.4

1.4 l/81 kW TSI G-TEC engine

Output (kW/rpm)	81/4800-6000	
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	200/1500-3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1395	
Body	**Octavia**	**Octavia Estate**
Transmission	**MG**	**MG**
Top speed (km/h)	195	193
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.9	11

1.4 ltr./110 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	110/5000-6000			
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	250/1500-3500			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1395			
Body	**Octavia**		**Octavia Estate**	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	219	219	216	216
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.1	8.2	8.2	8.3

1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	81/5800			
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	155/3800-4000			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1598			
Body	**Octavia**		**Octavia Estate**	
Transmission	**MG**	**AG**	**MG**	**AG**
Top speed (km/h)	192	190	191	188
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.6	12	10.8	12.2

1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	132/5100-6200 (132/4500-6200)[a]						
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	250/1250-5000 (280/1350-4500)[a]						
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1798						
Body	**Octavia**			**Octavia Estate**			
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**DSG 4x4**	**MG**	**DSG**	**DSG 4x4**	**DSG 4x4 Scout**
Top speed (km/h)	231	231	229	229	229	227	216
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	7.3	7.4	7.4	7.4	7.5	7.5	7.8

[a] Applies to 4x4 vehicles.

2.0 l/162 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	162/4500-6200			
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	350/1500-4400			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1984			
Body	**Octavia RS**		**Octavia Combi RS**	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	248	245	244	242
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	6.8	6.9	6.9	7.1

2.0 ltr./169 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	169/4700-6200			
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	350/1500-4600			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1984			
Body	**Octavia RS**		**Octavia Combi RS**	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	250	249	247	245
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	6.7	6.8	6.8	7

1.6 ltr./66 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	66/2750-4800	
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	230/1400-2700	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1598	
Body	**Octavia**	**Octavia Estate**
Transmission	**MG**	**MG**
Top speed (km/h)	186	183
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12.2	12.3

1.6 ltr./81 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	81/3200-4000							
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	250/1500-3000							
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1598							
Body	**Octavia**				**Octavia Estate**			
Transmission	**MG5**	**MG6**	**MG 4x4**	**DSG**	**MG5**	**MG6**	**MG 4x4**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	197	206	193	197	194	204	191	194
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.6	10.6	11.3	10.7	10.8	10.7	11.5	10.9

2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	105/3500-4000			
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	320/1750-3000			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968			
Body	**Octavia**		**Octavia Estate**	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	215	212	213	210
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.7	8.9	8.7	9

2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	110/3500-4000						
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	320/1750-3000 (340/1750-3000)[a]						
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968						
Body	**Octavia**			**Octavia Estate**			
Transmission	**MG**	**MG 4x4**	**DSG**	**MG**	**MG 4x4**	**MG 4x4 Scout**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	218	215	215	216	213	207	213
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.5/8.4[a]	8.5	8.6/8.5[a]	8.6/8.5[a]	8.6	9.1	8.7/8.6[a]

[a] Applies to cars with the EU6 emission standard.

2.0 ltr./135 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	135/3500-4000								
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	380/1750-3250								
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968								
Body	**Octavia**				**Octavia Estate**				
Transmission	**MG RS**	**DSG RS**	**DSG 4x4**	**DSG 4x4 RS**	**MG RS**	**DSG RS**	**DSG 4x4**	**DSG 4x4 Scout**	**DSG 4x4 RS**
Top speed (km/h)	232	230	228	228	230	228	226	219	224
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	7.9	7.9	7.1	7.6	8	8	7.2	7.8	7.7

Index

A

abroad
lead-free petrol 190
Abroad
Headlights 74
ABS
Operation 136
Warning light 34
ACC 150
Control symbol 32
Warning lights 40
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles 181
Accessories 178
Adaptive cruise control
automatic stop-start 151
Information messages 155
Operation 150
Operation Overview 152
Set/change the desired speed. 153
special driving conditions 154
Start control 152
Stop/resume control 152
Adaptive Cruise Control 150
Radar sensor 135
Set the clearance level 153
Warning lights 40
Adaptive headlight
see xenon headlight 70
Adjust
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) 118
Adjusting
Exterior mirrors 80
head restraints 82
seats 82
Steering wheel 9
the seats electronically 82
Adjusting the seats 8
Adjusting the seats electronically 82
Adjustment
Headlight beam 68
Advance warning/emergency braking
Warning light 40
AHL
see xenon headlight 70
Air-conditioning system
Air outlet vents 116
Airbag 14
Deactivating 19
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 19
Deployment 15
Front airbag 15
Head airbag 18
Knee airbag 17
Modifications and damage to the airbag system 180
Side airbag 17
Warning light 35
Airbag system 14
Air conditioning 112
Air distribution control 115
Climatronic 114
Manual air conditioning 113
Air distribution control 115
Air outlet vents 116
Alarm
Enable/disable 58
Switch off 58
Trailer 177
Triggering 58
Alcantara
cleaning 187
Anodized parts
Refer to vehicle maintenance 184
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 136
Anti-theft alarm system
Enable/disable 58
Trailer 177
Anti-theft wheel bolts 214
Armrest
Front 86
Rear 86
artificial leather 187
Ashtray 92
Assembling the
bar ball, Step 1 169
bar ball, Step 2 169
Assistance systems
OFF ROAD-mode 138
Assistance Systems
High-beam assistant 71
Assist systems 135
Auto-check control 40
Automatic driving lamp control 70
Automatic gearbox 129
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 225
Selector lever lock 130
Starting-off and driving 131
Tiptronic 130
Using the selector lever 129
Automatic gearbox modes 129
Automatic load deactivation 204
automatic transmission
selector lever lock defect 130
Automatic transmission
Kickdown 131
Launch control 131
Malfunction 37
Selector lever lock 130
Warning light 37
Warning messages 37
AUX 99
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) 117
Adjust 118
Switching on/off 118
Auxiliary heating (heating and ventilation)
Radio remote control 119

Avoiding damage to your vehicle 134

B

Bags
on the backs of the front seats 96
Ball head
Check fitting 170
Ready position 168
Ball rod
Ready position 168
Battery
In the remote control key 223
Belts 11
Belt tensioners 13
Bonnet
Closing 195
Opening 195
Boot
Class N1 vehicles 107
See Boot lid 59
Boot lid
automatic locking 59
Closing 59
Opening 59
Brake
information messages 32
warning light 32
Brake Assist (HBA) 137
Brake booster 127
brake fluid
specification 201
Brake fluid 200
Checking 200
information messages 32
Brake linings
warning light 36
Brake pedal (automatic transmission)
Warning light 37
Brakes
Brake booster 127
Brake fluid 200
Braking and stabilisation systems 135
Handbrake 127
Running-in 132
Brakes and parking 126
Brake system 135
Braking
Information on braking 126
Bulbs
Replacing 230
Buttons in the doors
electric window lifters 62

C

Camera
Lens care 185
Camera lens
care 185
Car computer
see multifunction display 41
Care and maintenance 178
Cargo element 106
Caring for the vehicle exterior
Towing hitch 186
Car park 128
Car park ticket holder 90
Carrier
Roof rack 110
Cavity protection 185
Central locking 53
Problems 57
Central locking button 55
Change
bulb for additional parking light 232
bulb for fog lights - Version 1 232
bulb for fog lights - Version 2 233
bulb for high beam 232
bulb for the parking light 232
bulb in the rear light - Version 1 235
bulb in the rear light - Version 2 235
daytime running light bulb 232
light bulb in tail light 234
Changing
Engine oil 197
Wheels 213
Changing a wheel
Follow-up tasks 216
Preparation 213
Changing wheels
Wheel removal and fix 216
Charging a vehicle battery 203
Check
Fit ball head properly 170
Checking
Battery electrolyte level 202
Brake fluid 200
Coolant 199
Engine oil 198
Oil level 198
Windscreen washer fluid 196
Checks
Statutory checks 178
Children and safety 20
Child safety
Side airbag 22
Child safety lock 57
Child safety seat
Use of child safety seats 22
Child seat
Classification 22
ISOFIX 23
on the front passenger seat 21
TOP TETHER 25
Use of ISOFIX child seats 24
Chrome parts
Refer to vehicle maintenance 184
Cigarette lighter 92

Clean
Anodized parts 184
Chrome parts 184
Cleaning
Alcantara 187
and maintaining belts 188
artificial leather 187
headlight glasses 185
materials 187
natural leather 187
plastic parts 184
seats covers of the electrically heated seats 188
wheels 185
Cleaning safety
belt 188
Cleaning seat
covers 188
Cleaning the interior
artificial leather 187
Seat covers 188
Cleaning the vehicle exterior
Camera lens 185
Cavity protection 185
Decorative films 183
Door locking cylinder 185
Headlight glasses 185
Protective films 183
Under-body protection 186
wheels 185
Windows and external mirrors 184
Cleaning vehicle 181
Cleaning vehicle exterior 182
Anodized parts 184
Chrome parts 184
Plastic parts 184
Rubber seals 184
Vehicle paint work 183
Wiper blades 186
Clean interior
Safety belt 188
Climatronic
air distribution control 115
Automatic operation 115
Operating elements 114
Clothes hook 96
CNG 193
Gas leak 193
in a traffic accident 193
Natural gas reserve display 30
refuelling 192
Refuelling 192
Regular checks 193
Sticker 193
Warning light 37
Cockpit
12-Volt power outlet 93
Ashtray 92
Cigarette lighter 92
General view 27
Lighting 74
storage compartments 89
useful equipment 89
COMING HOME 73
compartments 89
Component protection 180
Components of the puncture repair kit 217
Compressed natural gas
see CNG 193
Computer
see multifunction display 41
Convenience operation
sliding / tilting roof 65
Window 64
convenience turn signal 69
Coolant 198
Checking 199
Replenishing 200
Temperature gauge 29
Warning light 37
Warning messages 37
CORNER
see Headlights with CORNER function 73
Correct routing of seat belt 12
Correct seated position 8
Front passenger 10
Rear seats 10
Correct seat position
Driver 9
Counter for distance driven 30
Crew Protect Assist 160
cruise control
operation 148
operation Description 149
Cruise control system
Warning light 36
Cruise Control System 148
Cup holders 91

D

DAY LIGHT
see Daylight running lights 68
Daylight running lights 68
De-icing
windows 184
De-icing the windscreen and rear window 76
Deactivating an airbag 19
Decorative films 183
Delayed locking of the boot lid
see boot lid 59
Departure angle 243
Diesel
refer to Fuel 191
Diesel fuel
Operation in winter 191
Diesel particulate filter 38
information messages 38
Digital Clock 31
Dipstick 198

Disconnecting and reconnecting
vehicle battery 203
Display 29
Compass points 49
Coolant temperature 29
Gear changes 41
Natural gas reserve 30
Petrol / Diesel reserve 30
Service interval 49
Disposal
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles 181
Distance driven 30
Distance warning
Warning light 40
Door
Child safety lock 57
Closing 57
Emergency locking 224
Emergency locking the driver's door 224
Opening 57
Door warning 40
double hooks 103
Drive
Driving through water 134
DriveGreen 133
Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR) 137
Driving
Emissions 239
Fuel consumption 239
through water 134
Driving mode 157
driving mode select
Normal mode 157
Driving Mode Selection 157
DSR 137

E

ECO-TIP 49
Eco-tips 49
Economical driving
Tips 132
EDL 137
Electrical boot lid
set the top position of the lid 61
Electric boot lid
Force limit 60
Manual operation 60
Electric luggage compartment lid
Malfunctions 61
Operating 60
Electric window lifter 64
Window operation malfunctions 64
Electric window lifters 62
Buttons in the driver's door 62
Electronic differential lock (EDL, XDS) 137
Electronic immobilizer 120
emergency
replace battery in the remote control 223
Emergency
Changing a wheel 213
Hazard warning light system 73
Jump-starting 219
Locking the door without a locking cylinder 224
Locking the driver's door 224
Selector lever-unlocking 225
Switch off the engine by pressing a button 123
Towing the using the tow hitch 222
Towing the vehicle 220
Tyre repair 217
Unlocking the driver's door 224
emergency equipment
reflective vest 211
Emergency equipment
Fire extinguisher 212
First aid kit 211
Jack 212
Vehicle tool kit 212
Warning triangle 211
Emissions 239
Engine
Running-in 132
Warning messages 37
Engine compartment 194
Brake fluid 200
Overview 196
Vehicle battery 201
Engine number 236
engine oil
specification 197
Engine oil 197
Changing 197
Checking 198
Replenishing 198
Warning light 38
EPC
Warning light 35
ESC
Operation 136
Warning light 34
ESC Sport 136
Estate instrument
Natural gas reserve display 30
Estate Instrument panel
Petrol / Diesel reserve display 30
Exhaust inspection system
Warning light 34

F

Fastening elements 101
Fatigue detection 164
Function 164
Information messages 165
Films 183
Fire extinguisher 212
First aid kit 211
Floor covering
Fixing 103
in the luggage compartment 103

Fog lights 72
Warning light 36
Fold in passenger's mirror 80
Footmats 128
see footmats 128
Force limit
Electric boot lid 60
Power windows 63
Sliding/tilting roof 65
Front airbag 15
Front Assist 155
Disable/enable 156
Distance warning 156
Information messages 157
Operation 155
Radar sensor 135
Warning and automatic braking 156
Warning light 40
Front door warning light 75
fuel
lead-free petrol 190
Fuel 189
CNG 193
Diesel 191
Natural gas reserve display 30
Petrol / Diesel reserve display 30
refer to Fuel 189
Refuelling 189
Refuelling - natural gas 192
Warning light 36
Fuel consumption 239
Fuel filter
Warning messages 39
Fuel reserve
Warning light 36
Fuses
Assignment 226
Assignment of fuses in the dash panel 228
Colour coding 226
Fuse assignment in the engine compartment 229
Plastic clip 229
Replacing 226

G

Gear change
Gear recommendation 41
Information on the selected gear 41
Gear changing
Gear stick 128
General view
Cockpit 27
Genuine parts 179
Glasses compartment 95
Glow plug system
Warning light 34

H

Handbrake 127
Warning light 32
Hazard warning light system 73
HBA 137
Head airbag 18
Headlight cleaning system
Headlight cleaning system 78
Headlights
Bulb arrangement 231
Driving abroad 74
Headlight cleaning system 78
Headlights with CORNER function 73
Headrest
Removing and installing 83
Head restraints 82
Adjust height 82
Heater
Windscreen and rear window 76
Heating 112
Air distribution control 115
Controls 113
Exterior mirrors 80
Seats 85
HHC 137
High-beam assistant 71
High beam assistant
Warning light 39
Hill Start Assist (HHC) 137
Hitch 167
Drawback load 167
Hook 103
Horn 27

I

Ice scrapers 184
Ignition lock 121
Immobilizer 120
Individual settings
Locking 56
Unlocking 56
Inertia reel 13
Information system 40
Compass point display 49
Door warning 40
Eco-tips 49
Gear recommendation 41
Lap timer 48
MAXI DOT display 44
Multifunction display 41
operation 42
Service interval display 49
Stop watch 48
Information system operation 42
Infotainment 4
Instrument cluster 28
Auto-check control 40
Counter for distance driven 30
Display 29
Overview 28
Revolutions counter 29

Temperature gauge 29
Warning lights 31
Interior care 186
Natural leather 187
Interior light
Front 74
Interior lights
Rear 75
Interior monitor 58
iPad holder
Behind the headrests 99
Handling 99
ISOFIX 23

J

Jack 212
Maintenance 185
Jump-starting 219

K

KESSY
Locking 55
Unlocking 55
Key
Locking 54
Starting the engine 121
Stopping the engine 121
Switching off the ignition 121
Switching on the ignition 121
Unlocking 54
Key CAR
see Infotainment 4
Knee airbag 17

L

Lamp failure
Warning light 38
Lamps
Warning light 38
Lane Assist
see Lane Departure Warning 160
Warning light 36
Lane Departure Warning 160
Activation / deactivation 162
Information messages 162
Operation 161
Lap timer 48
Leather
Natural leather care 187
LEAVING HOME 73
Lever
Main beam 69
Turn signal 69
Levers
Windscreen wipers 78
Light
Cockpit 74
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME 73
Fog lights 72
Headlights with CORNER function 73
High-beam assistant 71
Rear fog light 72
Replacing bulbs 230
travel mode 71
Xenon headlight 70
Light Assist
High-beam assistant 71
lighting
entry space 75
Lighting
Luggage compartment 100
Lights 67
Automatic driving lamp control 70
Daylight running 68
Hazard warning light system 73
Headlight beam range regulation 68
Headlight flasher 69
Low beam 68
Main beam 69
Parking lights 68, 74
Switching on and off 68
Turn signal 69
Warning lights 31
Load 238
Locking
Individual settings 56
KESSY 55
Key 54
Remote control 54
Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside 55
Locking the door without a locking cylinder
Emergency 224
Long cargo channel 88
Low beam 68
Low tyre pressure warning
See tyre pressure monitoring 165
Luggage compartment 100
Compartment with cargo element 106
Cover 104
Fastening elements 101
Fix floor covering 103
Fixing nets 102
floor covering on both sides 103
foldable hook 103
Folding double hooks 103
Lighting 100
Luggage net 104
Net partition 109
Roll-up cover 105
Storage compartments under the floor covering 106
Stowing the roof rack 111
unlock manually 224
Unlock the boot lid 224
Variable loading floor 107
Luggage compartment cover 104
Roll-up cover 105

Luggage compartment lid 59
Luggage net 104
Luggage storage
Multi-function pocket 107

M

Main beam 69
Warning light 37
Maintenance
see vehicle care 183
Manual air conditioning
Air distribution control 115
Controls 113
Manual gear changing
see gear changing 128
Manually
adjusting seats 82
Manually adjusting seats 82
MAXI DOT display 44
Lap timer 48
Main menu 45
Menu item assist systems 48
Menu item Audio 47
Menu item navigation 46
Menu item telephone 47
Operation 45, 46
Stop watch 48
MAXI DOT see
MAXI DOT display 44
Maximum
permissible weights 236
MCB 138
Mechanical window lifter
open and close 62
Mechanical window lifters 61
Media
AUX 99
see Infotainment 4
USB 99
Memory 44
Memory Function for the seat 84
Mirror
Exterior mirrors 80
Interior mirror 79
Make-up 76
MODE button
see driving mode selection 157
Modifications 178
Modifications and technical alterations
Airbags 180
Service 179
Spoiler 180
Multi-function display
operation 42
Multi-function pocket 107
Multi collision brake (MCB) 138
Multifunction display
Functions 41
Information 42
Memory 44
Multifunction steering wheel
Operation 46
Multimedia
AUX 99
USB 99
Multimedia holder 94
Handling 99

N

N1 107
Nameplate 236
Natural gas operation
Warning light 37
Navigation
see Infotainment 4
Net partition 109
behind the front seats 109
behind the rarer seats 109
Removing and refitting the housing 110
Nets 102
NGVs
see CNG 193
Notes for driving with a repaired tyre 219
Notes on using wheels 205

O

OFF ROAD 138
ABS 140
EDS 140
ESC 140
hill descent assistant 139
operation 139
TCS 140
OFF ROAD mode
warning light 40
Oil
See Engine oil 198
Warning messages 38
Oil pressure
Warning messages 38
On-board computer
see multifunction display 41
Operating weight 237
Operation in winter
Diesel fuel 191
Vehicle battery 202
Original accessories 179
Overview
Engine compartment 196
Warning lights 31

P

Park assist
Departing from a parallel parking space 147
Information messages 147
Parking 146
Park Assist 144
Automatic brake assist 147
Operation 145
Parking space search 146
Parking 128
Park Assist 144
Parking aid 140
Rear View Camera 143
Parking aid 140
Automatic system activation when moving forward 143
Function 141
Parking assistance
Activation / deactivation 142
Display in the Infotainment display 142
Parking lights 68
Park Pilot 140
Park the vehicle
see Parking 128
Part replacement 178
Passive safety
Before setting off 8
Driving safety 8
Passive Safety 8
Pedals 128
Footmats 128
Petrol
see fuel 190
Phonebox 91
Plastic parts 184
Polishing vehicle paint work
see vehicle care 183
Positioning the
jack 215
Power limit
sliding/tilting roof 65
Power outlet
12 V 93
Power steering
Warning light 33
Power windows 61
Button in the front passenger door 63
Button in the rear doors 63
Practical equipment
Reflective vest 211
Practical features
12-Volt power outlet 93
Pockets on the backs of the front seats 96
Seat backrest with long cargo channel 88
Waste container 93
Proactive passenger protection 160
Warning light 35
ProActive passenger protection
Function 160
Protective films 183
Puncture repair kit 217

R

Radiator fan 196
Radio
see Infotainment 4
Radio remote control
Auxiliary heating (heating and ventilation) 119
Raising the vehicle 215
Rear-view mirror
Exterior mirrors 80
Fold in passenger mirror 80
Synchronous adjustment of the rear-view mirror 80
Rear fog light 72
Warning light 34
Rear mirror 79
Rear View Camera 143
Function keys 144
Operation 143
Orientation Lines 144
Rear view mirror
Interior mirror 79
Rear window - heater 76
Refuelling 189
Fuel 189
Fuel - natural gas 192
Remote control
Locking 54
Replacing the battery 223
Synchronisation process 223
Unlocking 54
Remote control key
Replacing the battery 223
Removable through-loading bag 98
Removing the
bar ball, Step 1 170
bar ball, Step 2 171
Repairs and technical alterations 178
Replace
the battery in the auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating) in the remote control 223
Replacing
Bulb for the licence plate light 233
Bulbs 230
Fuses 226
Fuses – engine compartment 229
Fuses – LHD 227
Fuses – RHD 227
Low beam bulb 231
Rear window wiper blade 226
Vehicle battery 203
windscreen wiper blades 225
Replenishing
Coolant 200
Engine oil 198
Windscreen washer fluid 196

Reversing camera
Lens care 185
Revolutions counter 29
Roller blind
Luggage compartment cover 105
Roof
Load 112
Roof rack 110
mounting points 111
Roof load 112
Stowing in the luggage compartment 111
Rubber seals 184
Running-in
Brake linings 132
Engine 132
Tyres 132

S

SAFE
See Safe securing system 56
SAFELOCK
See Safe securing system 56
Safe securing system 56
Safety 8
Child safety 20
Child safety seats 20
Correct seated position 8
Head restraints 82
ISOFIX 23
TOP TETHER 25
Saving electrical energy 132
Saving fuel 132
Seals
Vehicle care 184
Seat belt
height adjustment 12
warning light 32
Warning light 37
Seat belts 11
Belt tensioners 13
fastening and unfastening 13
Seatbelts
Inertia reels 13
Seat belts
The physical principle of a head-on collision 12
Seat features 85
Seats
Folding front passenger seat 86
Front armrest 86
Head restraints 82
Heating 85
Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat 84
Rear armrest 86
Seat backrests 87
Storing in memory of remote control key 84
Seats and head restraint 81
see automatic gearbox
Manual shifting of gears on the multifunction steering wheel 130
see Instrument cluster
see Instrument cluster 28
Select drive mode
Individual mode settings 159
Mode selection and Infotainment display 159
Select driving mode
Eco mode 158
Individual mode 158
Off-road mode 158
Sport mode 157
Selector lever
Refer to Selector lever 129
Selector lever lock
Warning light 37
Service 179
Service interval display 49
Warning light 40
Setting
Positions of the variable loading floor 108
Seat belt height 12
seats and head restraints 81
Settings
Interior mirror 79
Setting the
Clock 31
Side airbag 17
sliding/tilting roof
Sunblind 66
Sliding/tilting roof
Closing 65
Sliding / tilting roof
Malfunction 66
Malfunction of the sun blind 66
Sliding/tilting roof
Opening and tilting 65
Operation 65
SmartGate
Connection by searching for a Wi-Fi network 51
introductory information 50
Password/PIN code change 52
Setting 52
Wi-Fi Direct 51
SmartLink
see Infotainment 4
Snow chains 209
Sockets
230 V 97
Spare wheel 207, 208
Remove 213
stow 213
Speed symbol
see Wheels 208
Spoiler 180
Stabilisation system 135
Stability Control (ESC) 136
Staring engine
Jump-starting 219

START-STOP 124
Jump-starting 219
Manually deactivating/activating the system operation 126
Warning light 125
START-STOP system 39
Starter button 124
Problems starting the engine 124
Starting the engine 123
Steering column lock locking 122
Steering column lock unlocking 122
Switching off the engine 123
Switching off the ignition 123
Switching on the ignition 123
Starting and stopping the engine at the push of the button 122
Starting and stopping the engine using the key 120
Starting engine 120
Jump-starting 219
Starting the engine 219
Key 121
Starter button 123
START STOP 123
Information messages 126
Steering column lock locking 126
Starter button 122
Steering column lock unlocking 122
Starter button 122
Steering lock locking 122
Key 120
Steering lock unlocking 120
Key 120
Steering lock (KESSY system) 120
Warning light 33
Steering wheel 33
correct posture 9
setting 9
Stop 9
see Parking 128
Stopping the engine 128
Key 121
Stop watch 121
Storage 48
Storage compartment 89
Glasses compartment 95
in the front centre console 91
in the rear centre console 97
on the driver's side 90
on the front passenger side 95
under the front arm rest 95
Storage compartments 95
Storing 89
seats 84
Storing skis 84
Stowage 88
compartments in the doors 90
Sunblind 90
Operation 66
Sun screen 66
sun visors 77
Switching lights on and off 76
Switching off the engine 68
Starter button 123
Switching off the ignition 123
Key 121
Starter button 123
Switching on the ignition 123
Key 121
Starter button 123
Synchronous adjustment of the rear-view mirror 123
80

T

Tablet holder 80
Behind the headrests 99
Taking care of your vehicle 99
Automatic car wash system 182
High-pressure cleaner 182
Washing by hand 182
Wash system 181
TCS 182
Indicator light 33
Operation 136
Warning light 33
Technical data 33
Telephone 236
see Infotainment 4
Through-loading bag 4
Time 98
Tiptronic 31
Tools 130
TOP TETHER 212
Towing 25
Towing device 220
Accessories 171
Description 167
Towing eye 167
front 221
Rear 222
Towing hitch 222
Operation and maintenance 186
Towing protection 186
Towing the vehicle 58
Traction control (TCS) 220
Traffic sign recognition 136
Function 162
Information messages 163
Traffic Sign Recognition 164
Additional display 164
Traffic signs 164
see Traffic sign recognition 162
Trailer 162
13-pin socket 172
Attaching and detaching 172
loading 172
Safety eyelet 173
Trailer operation 172
176

Trailer operation 167, 176
Trailer stabilization system (TSA) 138
Transmission
Warning messages 37
Transport
Luggage compartment 100
Roof rack 110
Transporting 89
Transporting children safely 20
TSA 138
Turn signal 69
Turn signal system
Warning light 36
Tyre
Explanation of the label 208
see wheels 208
Tyre load-bearing capacity
see Wheels 208
Tyre pressure 205
Warning light 35
Tyre pressure monitoring 165
Display 35
Infotainment display 166
Saving tyre pressure values 165
Saving tyre pressure values - button 166
Saving tyre pressure values - Infotainment 166
Tyre repair
General information 218
Preparations 218
Pressure test 219
Sealing and inflating the tyre 218
Tyres 205
Damage 207
new 132
Tyre pressure 205
Wear 206
Wear indicator 207
Tyre size 208
see wheels 208

U

Under-body
Vehicle care 186
Under-body protection 186
Unlocking
Individual settings 56
KESSY 55
Key 54
Remote control 54
Unlocking and locking 53
USB 99
Used vehicles
Acceptance and recycling 181
Useful equipment
230-volt socket 97
Ashtray 92
Car park ticket holder 90
Cigarette lighter 92
Clothes hook 96
Cup holders 91
Glasses compartment 95
Multimedia holder 94
Removable through-loading bag 98
Storage compartment 89
Using the selector lever 129

V

Variable loading floor 107
Dividing the luggage compartment 109
Folding up 108
Position change 108
Vehicle battery
Automatic load deactivation 204
charging 203
Checking the battery electrolyte level 202
Cover 202
Operation in winter 202
Replacing 203
Safety instructions 201
Warning light 37
Vehicle care
Alcantara 187
Anodized parts 184
Artificial leather 187
Cavity protection 185
Chrome parts 184
Cleaning vehicle exterior 182
Cleaning wheels 185
Decorative and protective films 183
Door locking cylinder 185
Headlight glasses 185
Interior care 186
Jack 185
Maintenance 183
Materials 187
Natural leather 187
Plastic parts 184
Polishing vehicle paint work 183
Rubber seals 184
Safety belt 188
Seat covers 188
Under-body protections 186
washing 181
Vehicle condition
see Auto-check control 40
Vehicle data sticker 236
Vehicle data sticker and nameplate
Vehicle data sticker and nameplate 236
Vehicle dimensions 240, 241
Vehicle height 240, 241
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 236
Vehicle length 240, 241
Vehicle tool kit 212
Vehicle width 240, 241
vest
holder for reflective vest 211
VIN
Vehicle Identification Number 236

Visibility 76
Visors
see front sun visors 76
see Sun screen 77

W

Warning indicator of a low temperature
Warning light 39
Warning lights 31
Warning symbols
see Warning lights 31
Warning triangle 211
warning when speeding 43
Washing
Automatic car wash system 182
by hand 181
High-pressure cleaner 182
Washing vehicles 181
Waste container 93
Water in the fuel filter
Warning light 39
warning messages 39
Weather conditions 178
Wheel bolts
Anti-theft wheel bolts 214
Caps 214
Loosening and tightening 215
Wheel rims 205
Wheels
Age of wheels 205
Changing 213
Driving style 206
Full trim 213
General information 205
Load index 208
Low-profile tyres 207
Remove 213
Snow chains 209
Speed symbol 208
stow 213
Tyre damage 207
Tyre pressure 205
Tyre size 208
Tyre storage 205
Tyre wear 206
Tyre wear indicator 207
Wheel balance 206
Wheel replacement 207
Winter tyres 209
Wi-Fi
Connection 51
Password 51
Password change 52
see Infotainment 4
Setting 52
Wi-Fi Direct
Connection 51
Password change 52
Setting 52
Window operation
Convenience operation 64
Malfunctions 64
Window wiper
Replacing the rear window wiper blade 226
Windscreen
Heater 76
Windscreen washer fluid
Checking 196
Replenishing 196
Warning light 39
Winter 196
Windscreen washers
Windscreen washers 78
Windscreen washer system 196
Windscreen wipers
automatic rear window wipers 78
operation 78
Replacing the windscreen wipers 225
Windscreen washer fluid 196
Windscreen wipers and washers 77
Winter operation 209
De-icing windows 184
Snow chains 209
Winter tyres 209
Winter tyres
See Wheels 209
Wiper blades 186
Service position of the windscreen wiper arms 225
Wiper interval 78
Wipers
Maintaining wiper blades 186

X

XDS 137
Xenon headlight 70

Reprinting, duplicating, translating and any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s..

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2015

ŠKODA Service App – ŠKODA service in your pocket

The application ŠKODA service is provided for Smartphones with Android or iPhone systems. This task is mainly to help you as a customer of ŠKODA AUTO in difficult situations when on the road.

My Dealer – select your preferred dealer and read about their current offer or ŠKODA news.

Assistance – Contact a breakdown recovery service, find the nearest dealer when on the road and use the service Parking Helper.

My car – the complete operating instructions and a summary list of all the warning lights for a quick overview, a guide for media systems and Quick Tips.



Ready for download in the AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android.

ŠKODA Manual App – get to know your vehicle

The application ŠKODA Manual is designed for tablet users with the systems Android and iOS, who have an interest in getting to know the ŠKODA vehicle brand or already have one. The application contains the complete version of the electronic manual for all current models of the ŠKODA brand. Furthermore, it contains a list of all warning lights, a guide for media systems as well as a picture diagram of the Quick Tips.

Some of the main functions of the application include:

› Easy content navigation
› Easy content reading
› Full text search through the entire manual
› Tab for quick access to favourite chapter



Available on the App Store

GET IT ON Google play

www.skoda-auto.com

Návod k obsluze
Octavia anglicky 11.2015